

A Rhetorical Analysis of SABC 3's Flagship Bulletin:

In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of the news is credible?

Nkoala (Mcimeli) Sisanda – MCMSIS001

A dissertation submitted in fulfillment of the requirements for the award of the degree
of

Master of Philosophy in Rhetoric Studies

Faculty of the Humanities

University of Cape Town

2015

COMPULSORY DECLARATION

This work has not been previously submitted in whole, or in part, for the award of any degree. It is my own work. Each significant contribution to, and quotation in, this dissertation from the work, or works, of other people has been attributed, and has been cited and referenced.

Signature: SB Nkoala

Date: 10 February 2015

The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.

Plagiarism Declaration

CENTRE FOR FILM AND MEDIA STUDIES/ CENTRE FOR RHETORIC STUDIES

FULL NAME: SISANDA (MCIMELI) NKOALA

STUDENT NUMBER: MCMSIS001

CONTACT NUMBER: 073 138 5564

SUPERVISOR: DISTINGUISHED PROFESSOR PHILIPPE-JOSEPH SALAZAR

Plagiarism Declaration

1. I know that plagiarism is wrong. Plagiarism is to use another's work and pretend that it is one's own.
2. I have used the Harvard convention for citation and referencing. Each contribution to, and quotation in this essay from the work(s) of other people has been acknowledged through citation cited and referenced.
3. This dissertation is my own work.
4. I have not allowed, and will not allow, anyone to copy my work with the intention of passing it off as his or her own work.
5. I have done the word processing and formatting of this assignment myself.

Signature: SB Nkoala

Date: 10 FEBRUARY 2015

Abstract

This dissertation sets out to add to the existing body of research on the SABC by performing a rhetorical analysis of SABC 3's flagship English news bulletin, broadcast between 18:30 and 19:30, weekdays, and 19:00 and 19:30 on weekends. The purpose of this analysis is to determine the manner in which the SABC attempts to position itself as a credible news source through its use of the rhetorical tools of persuasion. As texts presented to an audience with the intention of persuading them of certain ideas, it is possible to study and analyse television news reports by employing the same rhetorical analysis techniques that one would use when analysing a political speech or any other rhetorical text. This dissertation is broken up into two major sections. Part one will discuss the theories and research around the notion of television news as rhetorical texts, setting the stage for part two of the dissertation, which will actually perform a rhetorical analysis on selected news stories aired on SABC 3 over a period of 30 days.

The key conclusions from this research are that the SABC frequently employs the *pathos* proof in its reports, primarily through the reporters using emotive language in their scripts, even though this is not always accompanied by corresponding footage. Instead of relying primarily on reporters to state and interpret the emotional aspects of the story, the broadcaster should be using its visuals to do this, drawing on the television journalism principle of 'show, don't tell', where visuals are the primary means through which a story is told, not the words. What the broadcaster should instead be doing is using the *logos* proof more, to make sound arguments for some of the claims that are made in its reports. The second key conclusion is that the broadcaster relies on the epideictic genre of rhetoric in most of its reports, when the deliberative and judicial genres would be more fitting.

The SABC has lost a significant number of viewers from the days when it was the sole television news broadcaster in South Africa, and there were no other alternatives. This dissertation shows that one of the main reasons for this is that the public broadcaster is failing to produce its news reports in a manner that correctly employs the tools of rhetoric to persuade viewers that its version of the news is credible.

Acknowledgements

I would like to thank my supervisor, Distinguished Professor Philippe-Joseph Salazar, whose knowledge of rhetoric has made me develop a keen interest in the discipline, and whose generosity helped me secure funding and support through the AW Mellon Scholarship. I would also like to thank the head of the Film and Media Department at the University of Cape Town, Professor Ian Glenn, who devoted time and energy to assist me while Professor Salazar was on sabbatical. Thirdly, I would like to thank all of my friends and family for their immense support and understanding over the past two years, more especially my dear husband, Fusi, who has been a pillar of strength. Finally I would like to dedicate this dissertation to my late father and mother, Fumanekile and Nobuntu Mcimeli, whose own passion for academia helped mould me into who I am today. To God be the glory.

Table of Contents

| | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| PLAGIARISM DECLARATION..... | I |
| ABSTRACT | II |
| ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS | III |
| TABLE OF CONTENTS | ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED. |
| ABBREVIATIONS..... | IX |
| LIST OF TABLES..... | X |
| 1. INTRODUCTION | 1 |
| 1.1 Introduction..... | 1 |
| 1.2 Background..... | 1 |
| 1.3 Focal Research Problem and Questions | 2 |
| 1.3.1 Key Terms..... | 3 |
| 1.4 Relevance of this Research..... | 3 |
| 1.5 Structure of Dissertation | 5 |
| 1.6 Limitations of the Study | 5 |
| 1.7 Conclusion..... | 8 |
| 2. LITERATURE REVIEW..... | 9 |
| 2.1 Key Texts for this Dissertation..... | 9 |
| 2.2 Other Relevant Texts..... | 11 |
| 2.3 Conclusion..... | 15 |
| 3. CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK..... | 17 |
| 3.1 Introduction..... | 17 |

| | |
|---|-----------|
| 3.2 Rhetoric and Television | 17 |
| 3.2.1 Television as a rhetorical text..... | 17 |
| 3.3 Television News Bulletins as Rhetorical Texts | 20 |
| 3.4 Aristotle’s Rhetoric and Television News | 22 |
| 3.4.1 Orator | 23 |
| 3.4.2 Audience | 28 |
| 3.4.3 Text..... | 30 |
| 3.5 The Rhetorical Situation..... | 32 |
| 3.6 The importance of context | 34 |
| 3.7 Conclusion..... | 35 |
| | |
| 4. RATIONALE OF METHODS..... | 36 |
| 4.1 Introduction | 36 |
| 4.2 Textual Analysis | 36 |
| 4.3 Methodology | 37 |
| 4.3.1 News Stories to be Analysed | 38 |
| 4.4 News Values | 39 |
| 4.5 Communicative Reporting Frames | 41 |
| 4.6 The Role of Images..... | 44 |
| 4.7 Conclusion | 45 |
| | |
| 5. ANALYSIS OF STORIES..... | 46 |
| 5.1 Internal Developments Within the SABC..... | 46 |
| 5.1.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 46 |
| 5.1.2 SABC coverage of this story | 47 |
| 5.1.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 49 |
| 5.2 Upgrades to President Jacob Zuma’s Home in Nkandla..... | 53 |
| 5.2.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 53 |
| 5.2.2 SABC coverage of this story | 53 |

| | |
|--|----|
| 5.2.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 55 |
| 5.3 The Death of Ficksburg Protestor, Andries Tatane | 57 |
| 5.3.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 57 |
| 5.3.2 SABC coverage of this story | 58 |
| 5.3.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 61 |
| 5.4 The Death of Thirteen South African Soldiers in the Central African Republic | 62 |
| 5.4.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 62 |
| 5.4.2 SABC coverage of this story | 63 |
| 5.4.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 66 |
| 5.5 The Detention of Cyril Karabus in the United Arab Emirates | 68 |
| 5.5.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 68 |
| 5.5.2 SABC coverage of this story | 68 |
| 5.5.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 70 |
| 5.6 De Doorns Bus Crash | 72 |
| 5.6.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 72 |
| 5.6.2 SABC coverage of this story | 72 |
| 5.6.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 74 |
| 5.7 Hugo Chavez Dies | 76 |
| 5.7.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 76 |
| 5.7.2 SABC coverage of this story | 76 |
| 5.7.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 78 |
| 5.8 Human Rights Day | 80 |
| 5.8.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 80 |
| 5.8.2 SABC coverage of this story | 80 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| 5.8.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 82 |
| 5.9 Kenyan Elections | 83 |
| 5.9.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 83 |
| 5.9.2 SABC coverage of this story | 83 |
| 5.9.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 85 |
| 5.10 Marikana Commission of Inquiry..... | 87 |
| 5.10.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration..... | 87 |
| 5.10.2 SABC Coverage of this story | 88 |
| 5.10.3 Does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 90 |
| 5.11 Nelson Mandela Hospitalised | 91 |
| 5.11.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 91 |
| 5.11.2 SABC Coverage of this story | 92 |
| 5.11.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 94 |
| 5.12 Tensions between North Korea and South Korea | 95 |
| 5.12.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 95 |
| 5.12.2 SABC coverage of this story..... | 95 |
| 5.12.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 97 |
| 5.13 Oscar Pistorius Murder Trial..... | 98 |
| 5.13.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 98 |
| 5.13.2 SABC coverage of this story..... | 99 |
| 5.13.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 101 |
| 5.14 Changes in the Price of Fuel | 102 |
| 5.14.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 102 |
| 5.14.2 SABC coverage of this story..... | 103 |

| | |
|---|-------|
| 5.14.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 104 |
| 5.15 Election of Pope Francis | 105 |
| 5.15.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration | 105 |
| 5.15.2 SABC coverage of this story..... | 105 |
| 5.15.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible? | 108 |
| | |
| 6. CONCLUSIONS | 109 |
| | |
| 7. REFERENCE LIST | 114 |
| | |
| 8. APPENDICES | 11422 |

Abbreviations

| | |
|------------|---|
| ANN7: | African News Network 7 |
| AU: | African Union |
| CAF: | Confederation of African Football |
| CAR: | Central African Republican |
| Cope: | Congress of the People |
| CONTRALSA: | Congress of Traditional Leaders of South Africa |
| DA: | Democratic Alliance |
| ECCAS: | Economic Community of Central African States |
| eNCA: | eNews Channel Africa |
| FIFA: | Federation International Football Association |
| GNU: | Government of National Unity |
| KEC: | Kenyan Electoral Commission |
| NPA: | National Prosecuting Authority |
| PAC: | Pan Africanist Congress |
| PTC: | Piece to Camera |
| SABC: | South African Broadcasting Corporation |
| SACP: | South African Communist Party |
| SAFA: | South African Football Association |
| SANDU: | South African National Defence Union |
| SAPS: | South African Police Service |
| SOQ: | Signing Out Que (Cue) |
| UAE: | United Arab Emirates |
| UDM: | United Democratic Movement |
| UN: | United Nations |
| US: | United States |
| VIP: | Very Important Person |

List of Tables

Table 1: News Values (adapted) Summary (Bednarek & Caple, 2012: 41)_____40

Table 2: Dominant Communicative Frames in South African Television news adapted
(Cottle & Rai, 2008) _____42 – 43

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Introduction

Television is a relatively new medium in South Africa, having only been introduced in the 1970s. Despite this, it plays an important role in helping citizens to make sense of the world around them. It was only introduced in the mid-1970s because the then-governing National Party was reluctant to allow the medium into South African homes because of its “potentially negative societal effects” (Barnett, 1998: 552). When it was eventually allowed, the government maintained strict control, and used it as part of its strategy to propagate the policies of apartheid. Even during the period of negotiating the transition into the democratic dispensation, television was seen as a powerful tool to communicate, inform and influence perceptions (Mpofu et al., 1996; Teer-Tomaselli and Tomaselli, 1995). Scholars such as Barnett and Teer-Tomaselli, who monitored this period of transition, say that the upheaval that was being experienced in South Africa was mirrored in television broadcasting at the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), as the corporation was transformed from “a state-controlled broadcaster into an independent public service broadcaster” (Barnett, 1998: 553).

1.2 Background

Much has been written about the SABC since the country became a democracy. Scholars such as Jane Duncan (1998, 2000, 2008), Eric Louw (1994, 2000, 2011), and Ruth Teer-Tomaselli (1995, 2001, 2008) were at the forefront of research that monitored the factors that have shaped the public broadcaster in post-apartheid South Africa. The existing body of research relating to the public broadcaster covers a range of themes, including: the role played by the SABC during South Africa's transitions from an apartheid state to a democracy, the SABC's position as the largest broadcaster in Africa, as well as ways in which the SABC should function in order to avoid being perceived as a mouthpiece of the government. What makes studies on the SABC especially interesting is the fact that media and journalism scholars are not the only ones who have taken a keen interest in the public broadcaster as a topic of study. Privately owned media houses and other state institutions, including the

Public Protector, the South African Human Rights' Commission, and the Auditor-General, have also penned elaborate reports on various developments at the SABC. Most recently, a damning report by the office of the Public Protector entitled, *When Governance and Ethics Fail*, found significant cases of maladministration, systemic corporate governance deficiencies and abuses of power at the public broadcaster (Public Protector, 2014). The interest shown by various sectors of society - government, academia, media and ordinary citizens - highlights the important role played by the SABC, and emphasises the need for multifaceted studies on this organisation.

1.3 Focal Research Problem and Questions

This dissertation sets out to add to the existing research on the SABC by performing a rhetorical analysis of SABC 3's flagship English news bulletin, which is broadcast from 18:30-19:30 on weekdays, and 19:00-19:30 on weekends. The purpose of this analysis is to determine the manner in which the SABC attempts to position itself as a credible news source through its use of the rhetorical tools of persuasion. As texts presented to an audience, with the intention of persuading them of certain ideas, it is possible to study and analyse television news reports by employing the same rhetorical analysis techniques that one would use when analysing a political speech or any other rhetorical text.

This dissertation is broken up into two major sections. Part One will discuss the theories and research around the notion of television news as rhetorical texts, setting the stage for Part Two of the dissertation, which will analyse selected news stories aired on SABC 3 over a period of 30 days. The dissertation has been broken up into these two sections because, even though research exists around television and rhetoric, it will be shown that more specific studies need to be undertaken that will expound on the ways in which rhetoric applies to the genre of television news in particular. In order to do so, the dissertation must first engage in a thorough discussion of television news reports as rhetorical texts, and then proceed to undertake an analysis of these texts to demonstrate how the theories apply.

1.3.1 Key Terms

Before proceeding with this discussion, a few terms need to be clarified as they relate to the texts to be considered. When the dissertation refers to a news bulletin, this includes the entire hour-long newscast, featuring headlines, news reports, banter by the anchors and jingles.

When referring to a news report, it is referring to the segment of the bulletin, usually around a minute and a half long, which includes the introduction by the anchor, as well as the package filed by the reporter. When the dissertation refers to a news story it is talking about all the news reports that are filed in relation to specific incidents or developments. Thus, for example, when the dissertation talks about the Oscar Pistorius news story, it refers to all the reports that have been filed about Oscar Pistorius. Depending on the extent of the coverage, a news story can be made up of one or several news reports, usually aired over several days.

Thus Part One of the dissertation will answer the question: what features of television news, and in particular SABC 3's flagship English news bulletin, make it a text that can be analysed rhetorically? Part Two will answer the following question for each of the stories that are analysed: in what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its coverage of a particular news story is credible?

1.4 Relevance of this Research

Research that sets out to explore the applicability of the discipline of rhetoric to television news in the South African context is important for two main reasons. Firstly, there are no studies that exist that analyse the SABC's news content from a rhetorical perspective; most studies on the SABC explore media concepts such as framing, bias, and priming. This dissertation, therefore, aims to provide a starting point for future research that explores the links between television news reports as media texts that are capable of being persuasive, and the discipline of rhetoric. Secondly, undertaking this type of study is important because a rhetorical analysis explores the notion of persuasiveness in a way that other theories, such as framing, priming and bias, cannot. It approaches news reports as texts that seek to persuade viewers, and as such, this particular discipline makes use of tools that analyse the manner in which the words and pictures are used in this endeavour to be persuasive. This persuasion can be in two respects - the news report can attempt to persuade the audience of a certain

point of view used to cover stories; and the news report can attempt to persuade the audience that its version of events, as far as a particular story is concerned, are credible. There is a difference between these two approaches. The first aims to persuade the audience of a certain point of view on a matter, and to convince viewers to agree with the broadcaster's stance on a story. The second is about persuading the audience of the channel's credibility in its reporting. In this respect, the aim is not to get the audience to agree with the broadcaster's perspective on a story, but rather to concede that even if the audience differs in their interpretation of how a certain news story unfolded, the version presented by the public broadcaster can be deemed to be credible because it comes across as being objective, unbiased, fair and accurate. This dissertation will consider the latter by asking whether SABC 3's news reports are written and reported on in such a way as to be persuasive to viewers that this channel's version of events is credible.

The question of the SABC's ability to persuade viewers of its credibility as a news source is especially poignant at this point in time because the public broadcaster has lost hundreds of thousands of viewers, since new news players such as eNCA and ANN7 have come onto the scene. The latest viewership figures show that SABC 3 news attracts an average of 566 913 adult viewers every evening, compared to around 3 million people who watch eNews Prime Time (on the free to air eTV) in the same time slot (Ferreira, 2014). This suggests that the public broadcaster is somehow not being persuasive enough as a news source so as to keep viewers tuned in. By exploring the relationship between the disciplines of rhetoric and media studies, through an analysis of the SABC 3 news bulletin, this dissertation will hopefully come up with insights as to where the public broadcaster is going wrong, and how these issues can be rectified.

The early evening news bulletin on SABC 3 has been selected because it is seen to be the public broadcaster's flagship English news bulletin. The fact that it was extended from a 30 minute bulletin (from 19:00-19:30) daily, to an hour long newscast on week nights (from 18:30-19:30) and a half an hour long bulletin on weekends (from 19:00-19:30) has further etched its importance in the minds of viewers because it is the only news bulletin across SABC television channels that is an hour long. While English is not the most widely spoken language in the country, and the English news bulletin does not necessarily enjoy the largest

viewership when compared to SABC news bulletins broadcast in other languages, the English news bulletin does enjoy a certain level of prestige, and it is the public broadcaster's flagship bulletin.

1.5 Structure of Dissertation

As has been stated, the dissertation is broken up into two sections. The first section will begin by discussing television as a medium, and focus particularly on public service broadcasting. It will then examine the existing body of literature on television as a text, with features that allow for a rhetorical analysis, and then focus on the genre of television news in particular. It will then consider the theory around rhetoric as a discipline, using Aristotle's arguments on the discipline, and discuss its applicability to television news. The dissertation will then discuss the merits of the methodology of analysis that has been chosen, namely textual analysis, bringing the first section to an end. The second part of the dissertation will be comprised of the analysis, discussion and conclusion chapters. It will consider the discourse used by the journalists who filed respective news reports, in an attempt to ascertain whether they succeeded or failed rhetorically to compile them in such a way that might be persuasive of the broadcaster's credibility. The analysis will bring together media theories with the discipline of rhetoric, and also include a brief discussion on the images that accompany these stories, since the visual aspect of television news is just as crucial as the spoken and written component.

1.6 Limitations of the Study

Because the dissertation endeavours to thoroughly analyse a few stories, only fifteen out of the hundreds of news stories covered in the 30 day period will be considered as a starting point for future research of this nature. Granted, this approach may raise questions on the somewhat random selection of stories to be analysed. However it must be noted that since the objective of the dissertation is to perform a rhetorical analysis, the key consideration is not which stories are analysed, but whether a considerable range of stories is analysed, and the rigorousness of the analysis. This study is a general analysis that seeks to gauge whether the SABC succeeds or fails in persuading viewers of the credibility of its coverage of particular news stories. This approach is beneficial in so far as it provides a broad-stroke

analysis of the SABC's ability to be persuasive of its credibility in covering stories generally. However it is limited in its ability to discuss the public broadcaster's success or failure of credibility when it comes to the coverage of specific themes such as crime or politics or human interest stories. A similar analysis centred on certain thematic news stories should be considered as a possible area for future research.

Another notable limitation in this study is the fact that it focuses primarily on the words used by the reporters, and does not delve deeply enough into the words used by interviewees. This is primarily because one needs to understand the context in which certain sound bites were made by a particular person, and subsequently edited in the newsroom, in order to be able to do this type of analysis justice. In order to do that, one would need to have access to the interview in its entirety, something that was not possible because of time constraints and limited access to the necessary material. Further, the information that would have been obtained from analysing the words of the interviewees would not really have shed light on the SABC's ability to be persuasive in its reporting. The reporter covering a particular story has some measure of control on the sound bites used, but since these depend largely on what the interviewee says, reporters do not really have any control over these in the same way that they do when it comes to writing up their news report scripts. Thus the primary way in which the SABC can control the words used in its news reports, and subsequently the degree of persuasion, is through the scripts of the journalists and anchors. As such it is the words used by these actors that will be most useful in this analysis.

The third limitation relates to the analysis of the images that form part of the news reports. While the dissertation has considered the relevance of the images used in the respective stories, the consideration has been somewhat limited for two key reasons. Firstly, undertaking a comprehensive rhetorical analysis of the images used in the news reports is an exercise that warrants a well-researched study of its own. The theory of visual rhetoric that would underpin this would need to be thoroughly discussed to make the analysis worthwhile. Space and time constraints do not allow that such an analysis be undertaken in this particular dissertation. Secondly, unlike the verbal and written component of the news reports, which could be transcribed easily, it is difficult to provide a usable record of the images that accompany this study, which would allow anyone who wishes to reference this dissertation to be able to do so. The recordings were made using DSTV's PVR technology, which meant that it was near impossible to duplicate these and include them as an attachment to the thesis.

Further, it would thus be difficult for anyone reading the paper to understand what was being referred to in the analysis section clearly, if it relied too heavily on the visuals. Thus, for the purposes of this dissertation, the images are considered, but minimally. This, however, is not how television news should be viewed, namely with images merely acting as a supporting feature for the words; each news story should be considered in its entirety. Thus, this limitation alludes to another area in which studies on the topic of television news and rhetoric can further be developed.

The final limitation of this study is the fact that the analysis is performed on individual news stories as opposed to the news bulletin in its entirety as a text. There are two main approaches that could have been employed in exploring the manner in which SABC 3's English news bulletin employs the tools of rhetoric. The first considers and analyses the news bulletin in its entirety, while the second considers and analyses the individual news stories. With the former approach, one would examine the respective elements, such as the news reports, the ordering of the news items, the music used at the beginning and end of the bulletin, as well as the graphics that feature in the packaging. This approach would provide answers to questions centred around which types of stories were deemed to be most important, which stories receive frequent coverage, and what can be inferred from the way in which the news bulletin was ordered. These are evidently important areas, and once again it is recommended that further studies that endeavour to unpack this be undertaken, however the scope of this dissertation does not allow for this. The second approach, which is the one employed in this dissertation, is to focus on individual news stories, and to consider them as complete texts when performing the analysis. It provides a better sense of the narrative that was employed throughout the coverage of a particular story over the time period under consideration. Through this approach, one can monitor how the SABC told the story around a particular court case, for example, and consider the language used by the journalist in his or her coverage, in an attempt to gauge the manner in which the tools of rhetoric were employed, as well as whether the public broadcaster succeeded or failed in its endeavours to be persuasive of its credibility as a news source. This approach will examine issues such as whether the journalist placed greater emphasis on the facts of a story, or his or her subjective interpretation; the news values upon which the stories covered appear to have been based, and how these position the public broadcaster either as a news source at the forefront of breaking new developments, or one that consistently lags behind and relies on old news; and the communicative frames that are employed by journalists in their coverage.

1.7 Conclusion

This introduction has shown the importance of television in South Africa, and has argued for the need for studies, such as this dissertation, that explore this medium as a rhetorical text. It has also shown that there are number of limitations that arise when one analyses television news using rhetorical tools. The relevant literature on television and rhetoric will now be discussed.

2. LITERATURE REVIEW

2.1 Key Texts for this Dissertation

Aristotle's (1994) *The Art of Rhetoric* and Roman rhetorician, Quintilian's (2002) twelve volume textbook, *Institution Oratoria*, are two of the most influential texts on rhetoric. These two texts outline the technical aspects of the discipline. Aristotle's contribution in this regard is in describing and discussing the three genres of rhetoric – deliberative, forensic and epideictic – and the three modes of persuasion – *ethos*, *pathos* and *logos*. Quintilian's contribution is in outlining the five canons of rhetoric, namely invention, arrangement, style, memory and delivery. These concepts are still foundational to rhetoric today, and are applicable to any text that can be analysed rhetorically, including television news reports.

In terms of texts that look at television news and rhetoric specifically, Ronald Primueau's (1979) *The Rhetoric of Television* is by far the most comprehensive book on the subject. This book seeks to assist media scholars to understand why television programmes are constructed in the way that they are, and how they can be deconstructed to better understand their meaning. The book marries the discipline of rhetoric with media studies, and covers three key themes, "Putting Viewers Back in Control", "Classical Rhetoric in Media" and "Rhetorical Strategies in Television". Each chapter begins with a broad discussion on theories of media studies and rhetoric, and then provides practical ways in which these theories can be observed through different television genres. Of particular relevance to this dissertation are the chapters under the "Classical Rhetoric in the Media" section, as well as the chapter entitled "Guess Who's Coming to Dinner: Electric Collage and the Making of the Evening News". These portions address the theme of this dissertation directly, by proving the link between television news and rhetoric. But while this book engages well with the concepts that relate television news with the discipline of rhetoric, it falls short of actually performing a rhetorical analysis on the different television programmes, including the news. And it is this gap, which is evident in most of the books and papers written on television news and rhetoric, that this dissertation aims to fill.

The next text that informs the concepts dealt with in this dissertation is a chapter from William Brandt's (1970) *The Rhetoric of Argumentation* that deals with reportorial writing. Because this dissertation will focus primarily on the news reports aired in the SABC 3 bulletin, Brandt's thorough discussion will provide a useful foundation of how one reads a news report using rhetorical techniques. Brandt's focus is primarily on written reports, such as newspaper and magazine feature articles. However, the notion of a reportorial text applies to any text where the author employs the journalistic practices of report writing, including television news reports, and is thus applicable to this dissertation. The chapter "Reportorial Writing" begins by discussing the differences between classic rhetorical texts, such as speeches and essays, and a text written as a report, as is the case with a news story. It then demonstrates how latter can be analysed using rhetorical tools by drawing on magazine feature articles as case studies. This dissertation will apply Brandt's approach to its analysis of television news reports.

Another work that is important to this study is Lloyd Bitzer's (1992) "The Rhetorical Situation" which expounds on the contexts, or 'situations', in which orators come up with rhetorical discourse (Bitzer, 1992: 1). Bitzer notes the three elements that must be present in order for a situation to be considered to be rhetorical, namely an exigence, the audience, and certain constraints "which influence the rhetor and can be brought to bear upon the audience" (Bitzer 1992: 6). Later in the dissertation it will be shown that Bitzer's work on the rhetorical situation is probably one of the most relevant texts which show how the rhetorical notions of the exigence and constraints are linked to the media studies' concepts of news values and communicative frames of reporting, which are fundamental to the analysis of news reports. By having a conceptual framework that brings these important media and rhetoric concepts together, Bitzer's work provides a framework on how to perform the rhetorical analysis, while making use of these important media studies' concepts. This paper will be discussed in greater detail in the methodology section, but it begs mentioning here in the literature review, as one of the key texts that have been taken into consideration.

2.2 Other Relevant Texts

The studies discussed above deal with foundational concepts which relate to the topic of this dissertation, namely the applicability of the discipline of rhetoric to television news. There have been other studies that attempt to marry rhetoric and television news, however these have tended to be case studies with very specific contexts, and that are predominantly based on how American and British television news networks employ rhetoric in their reporting. Examples include research by Phyllis Kannis (1993) on the role of local television coverage in US elections; a study that provides an analysis of the political rhetoric used in the 1980 US election conducted by Hugh Rank (1980); and Michael Gurevitch et al.'s (2009) analysis of the impact of the dynamics between old and new media on political communication in the US in the 1960s. This body of research has political rhetoric as its dominant theme, and the theories and concepts that are discussed are applicable to democracies across the world, but the analysis is still specific to environments where rich and diverse studies on political communication already exist. Further, while making reference to rhetoric, the focus of these studies is not necessarily on the applicability of this discipline to writing television news reports, instead it is on how the rhetoric used by news actors in television news reports, including politicians and commentators, influenced certain political outcomes. These studies are not primarily concerned with how journalists script their news reports in order to be persuasive, rather they examine what news actors had to say, or more accurately what they were quoted as having said, and then they examine the impact that these quotes or sound bites had on the public. Thus, this dissertation seeks to explore the analysis of news reports from the perspective of the journalists who write up the reports, something that does not appear to have been undertaken in previous studies.

With specific reference to rhetoric and television news in the South African context, two key studies emerge. The first is Kristin Orgeret's (2008) paper, "From His Master's Voice and Back Again? Presidential Inaugurations and South African Television – the Post-Apartheid Experience", which provides a useful starting point on how one can begin to unpack the rhetoric behind SABC news. It brings together a general rhetorical analysis of the SABC's coverage of three presidential inaugurations in 1994, 1999 and 2004, and discusses the political climate that may have informed the SABC's rhetoric in reporting on these events. The paper examines a live broadcast of the occasions, and analyses the rhetoric employed by

the anchors that provided the coverage. Orgeret's research is primarily focused on what the anchors said, and the prevailing political rhetoric and developments that underpinned the respective inaugurations. The two fundamental differences between Orgeret's analysis and the analysis undertaken by this dissertation are that, firstly, the events considered by Orgeret were live, whereas those being considered by this dissertation are scripted, edited and mainly pre-recorded. While the anchors in Orgeret's paper most likely had scripts, they also spoke 'off the cuff' a great deal of the time because the event was being aired live, and their primary task was to interpret and contextualise the events that were unfolding for viewers. Thus, while they were probably armed with background information on aspects such as the names and designations of the dignitaries in attendance, the significance behind the 'pomp and ceremony', as well as the history of the country, they did not really know ahead of time what they were to say at any given moment. The news reports being considered in this dissertation, on the other hand, are scripted and pre-recorded texts in which the journalists and anchors deliberately write and edit so that they persuade viewers of their credibility in a way that is markedly different from a live-broadcast.

The second difference between Orgeret's study and this dissertation is that the former is an analysis that tries to determine what message the anchors were trying to convey in their coverage, whereas this dissertation seeks to analyse how SABC 3 news reports attempt to persuade viewers of the broadcaster's credibility. Orgeret seeks to understand how the political developments, and the anchor's own perceptions of these, influenced the rhetoric they used in their coverage of these inaugurations. Unlike this dissertation, Orgeret's focus is not on how the news reports set out to be persuasive and to create an impression of credibility. Rather, the paper is about what messages the anchors conveyed in their analysis, and how these were influenced by the political developments during the respective time periods it considers. But in spite of these differences, this is an important study to consider because other than being one of the few studies that exists on rhetoric and South African television news, albeit not necessarily news reports, it provides an example of how one might analyse a news report using rhetorical techniques. As has been shown by some of the studies above, most of the literature that looks at television news and rhetoric primarily focuses on providing a conceptual framework of how the two relate; they stop short of actually demonstrating this by performing the analysis that they say is possible. Orgeret's paper takes this step, and is thus worth considering for this dissertation.

The other study worth noting is one done by Simon Cottle and Mugdha Rai (2008) entitled “Television News in South Africa: Mediating an Emerging Democracy”. This paper provides a thorough and fairly up-to-date review of South Africa’s television news landscape. It notes that “[t]he role of South African television news in enabling and enacting democratic processes...remains largely unnoticed and under-theorised” (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 343), hence acknowledging that more work needs to be done in coming up with theoretical frameworks to better understand the dynamics that shape the South African television news environment. The paper is successful in identifying and analysing “the repertoire of communicative frames that characterise contemporary South African television news both within, as well as across the daily news programmes delivered by the public broadcaster, SABC, and the private, free to air network, eTV” (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 343). It concludes by noting “there is considerably more complexity in the field of television news than has so far been acknowledged or explored and these complexities have a direct bearing on debates about the establishment and enhancement of ‘democracy’ in South Africa's diverse, fractured and troubled polity” (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 343). Cottle and Rai's conclusion adds credence to the need for this particular dissertation - namely to develop a comprehensive body of research that will explore how television news in South Africa covers stories so as to be persuasive to the viewer that its version of events is credible.

Undertaking this research, which explores rhetoric and television news in the South African context, has revealed that the diverse and detailed body of research that exists in western democracies is severely lacking in our country. Bearing in mind the importance of television news as a media platform for informing and educating South Africans, the lack of adequate research into this field further justifies the need for studies such as this. The other under-explored area of research that the literature review exposed pertains to the field of visual rhetoric, particularly where images are linked to audio as it happens on television news. Most of the research that has been done in relation to visual rhetoric is in print advertising, and even there, scholars agree that a more comprehensive theory of visual rhetoric still needs to be developed. Linda Scott, for instance, posits that scholars must formulate a “convention-based symbolic system” to help analyse visuals using rhetorical analysis techniques (1994: 252). Scott's paper primarily deals with visuals as they are employed in print media campaigns, but the general points raised can be applied to all contexts where visuals are partnered with words, written or spoken, with the intention of persuading an audience. Scott’s paper further argues that,

“visual elements must be capable of representing concepts, abstractions, actions, metaphors, and modifiers, such that they can be used in the invention of a complex argument. There further must be an ability to guide the order of argumentation via the arrangement of the visual elements” (Scott, 1994: 253).

There is no doubt that the visual elements of a news story are capable of doing this. The question, however is, what meaning can be drawn, and how can this meaning be interpreted and communicated? Scott’s research addresses this by highlighting that under an adequate theory of visual rhetoric, “we would expect the visual viewpoint, focus, graphics, and layout to be related in a specific way to the message itself, rather than to be independent variables” (Scott, 1994: 253). Scott specifically writes in relation to advertising, which seeks to persuade consumers to buy a product, but this conclusion is adequately applicable to television news, which seeks to persuade viewers that its version of a particular news story is credible.

An area of research that the existing body of literature on television news and rhetoric devotes considerable attention to relates to the manner in which television news influences public perception on certain issues. As has been stated above, this type of persuasion is not the focus of this dissertation, but since this is an area of study that has been richly explored, it warrants mentioning. A study on television news and citizens’ explanation of national affairs in the US, for instance, shows overwhelmingly “individuals’ explanations of political issues are significantly influenced by the manner in which television news presentations frame these issues” (Iyengar, 1987: 815). Most of these studies are quick to point out that this ‘ability’ does not exist in a vacuum, but is either confirmed or challenged by “the societies in which [the news is] produced” (Deo et al., 2008: 148). The study by Deo et al. further explores the manner in which these societal influences have a bearing on how journalists construct their news reports. Journalists are just as susceptible as other people to the influences of the societies in which they live. It is thus likely for them to be oblivious to how the environments they live in influence their reporting, and the ways in which they view the issues they report on. Using the issue of crime as a case study, Deo et al’s paper delves deeply into how this occurs, and concludes that “within the media, ideologies are transmitted through frames. Each frame tells the audience how to think about an issue and encourages the audience to interpret events in terms of a key idea” (Deo et al., 2008: 148). Mark Peterson and نوسرتيپ كرام argue similarly that “[n]ews stories are produced by journalists who approach situations with a set of interpretive frames... The structures of the texts these

writers produce reflect the interpretive frames with which the journalists have sought to understand ‘the story’ ” (2013: 240). And the manner in which the journalist has understood a particular story has an influence on how he or she reports on it, and attempts to package it in a way that portrays it as a credible version of the events being considered.

Other relevant studies that have been conducted in relation to television news and persuasion are those that consider television as a medium that is deemed to be highly useful in influencing public perception, such that organisations, including political parties, non-profits and businesses, still see incredible value in getting positive coverage on this platform. Even though there have been changes to the media landscape, with online media becoming more prominent, and television viewing patterns changing, television news is still seen as an important medium by those in power, especially in the South African context. Thus the power and influence that the television medium seems to wield, means that viewers are likely to attribute greater credibility to a story that they see broadcast on television news than one that is online, unless the latter has been verified or is being carried by a well-known news source. Exploring this notion, Gurevich et al. (2009: 164) conclude that “the television-politics relationship that emerged in the 1960s still prevails to some extent in the digital era but faces new pressures that weaken the primacy of the broadcast-centred model of political communication”. These critics elaborate on the impact of the digital era on television, and highlight ways in which television is still the preferred medium when it comes to political actors attempting to influence the electorate. The relevance of this preference to this dissertation is that, of the various news platforms available, television news is still deemed to be the most powerful, and with this power comes a perception of credibility - a feature that is under consideration as far as SABC 3’s English news bulletin is concerned.

2.3 Conclusion

In concluding this chapter a number of observations are made. Firstly, the body of work that links the discipline of rhetoric to television news reporting is very small indeed. There are numerous studies that examine the rhetoric expressed in television news around specific themes such as crime, politics and gender. These include John Elderidge’s (1983), “War and Peace News on British Television”; Ted Smith and Derek Verral’s, (1985) “A Critical Analysis of Australian Television Coverage of Election Opinion Polls”; Richard Forgette and

Jonathan Morris's (2006) "High-Conflict Television News and Public Opinion", and "Los Angeles Riots and Television" by Amitava Kumar (1992). These studies have not been elaborated on as part of the literature considered by this dissertation because, while they link television news and rhetoric, their focus is on the rhetoric used, in the sense of the words chosen, rather than in how the discipline of rhetoric applies to the genre of television news in these instances. Thus, in considering Kumar's analysis of the coverage of the 1992 Los Angeles riots, as an example, one observes that the paper primarily focused on the language used by news actors in reporting on the riots, rather than in how the discipline of rhetoric could have been used in the newscast's attempts to be persuasive. This prevalent discrepancy arises because the term 'rhetoric' is not used in the same manner colloquially as it was by classical rhetoricians, and has come to mean, 'eloquence or a way with words', rather than a reference to the discipline. Overall, more research needs to be conducted when it comes to understanding the link between rhetoric and television news in South Africa and this dissertation aims to provide a starting point towards that.

Now that the existing literature on television news and rhetoric has been discussed, the dissertation will examine the conceptual framework that informs this study. It will begin by focussing on the characteristics of television that makes it a 'text' capable of being analysed rhetorically, drawing on the work of Aristotle and Quintilian. It will then focus on television news and the conventions of rhetoric that are applicable to this genre. Finally, it will conclude by referring to Aristotle's posits around the discipline of rhetoric, and discuss whether these can be observed in the manner in which SABC 3's English news bulletin attempts to persuade viewers that it is a credible news source.

3. CONCEPTUAL FRAMEWORK

3.1 Introduction

This chapter seeks to make the case that television news reports are texts that can be analysed rhetorically, and it seeks to demonstrate how the technical aspects of rhetoric, outlined by Aristotle and Quintilian can be observed in the genre of television news. As has been demonstrated in the literature review, the body of research that explores how the discipline of rhetoric can be applied to television news is very small indeed. Thus before one proceeds to perform a rhetorical analysis on these types of texts, it is important to establish the idea that television news reports are indeed texts that can be analysed rhetorically, and then to show the features that they possess that differentiate them from traditional rhetorical texts.

The chapter will begin by exploring the link between rhetoric and television in general; highlighting research that shows that television is a medium that can be analysed rhetorically. It will then discuss how the modes of persuasion and canons of rhetoric can be applied to television news reports. Further, it will explore the concept of the rhetorical situation as posited by Bitzer, and examine its applicability to television news. Finally, it will conclude by noting some limitations to this approach, as well as highlighting the importance of context in the production and consumption of television news. This chapter contributes to the first part of this dissertation, whose goal is to discuss the theories and research around television news and rhetoric, in order to inform the second part, where a rhetorical analysis of selected SABC 3 news reports will be performed.

3.2 Rhetoric and Television

3.2.1 Television as a rhetorical text

Rhetoric may be defined as “the faculty of discovering the possible means of persuasion in reference to any subject” (Cockcroft, 2005: 4). Scholars of the discipline seek to understand, and then record ways in which people communicate in order to persuade their audience of a point of view. Traditionally the emphasis has been on written and spoken texts, in the form

of speeches and essays. However as new and modern forms of communication have developed as a result of advances in technology, scholars have been studying the applicability of rhetoric to other communication formats. A paper on the trends in the study of rhetoric in the 1970s argued that such developments were necessary, stating:

“[t]he effort should be made to expand the scope of rhetorical criticism to include subjects that have not traditionally fallen within the critic's purview...The rhetorical critic has the freedom to pursue his study on subjects with sensory potential or persuasive effects in whatever setting he may find them, ranging from rock music and put-ons to architecture and public forums” (Bitzer & Black, 1971: 221).

This implies that television and other forms of mass media are also suitable mediums on which a rhetorical analysis can be performed.

In his book, *The Rhetoric of Television*, Primeau (1979: 21) notes the applicability of rhetoric to the medium of television when he states that, “[t]elevision viewers often forget that programs are intended not only to entertain but to sell products and to communicate attitudes and beliefs”. He thus implies that the manner in which television programmes are structured and produced exposes an inherent view that they are texts that can and *should* be able to persuade - a feature that characterises all rhetorical texts. Another scholar that examines the idea of television as a text with features that render it capable of being analysed rhetorically notes “[t]elevision programs are a *little* like books, precisely because they are made to be ‘read,’ taken in, and interpreted by the audience” (Abercrombie, 1996: 9; italics included in text). Still another argues that “because mass media, particularly television, tend to expand and intensify man’s insights into the imperfections of his society, they often play a primary role in shaping the character of his rhetorical responses” (Berg, 1972: 255). These scholars, therefore, support the argument that is being made by this dissertation, namely that television is a text that can be analysed rhetorically. The dissertation will now consider some of the characteristics of this medium that makes this possible.

In the same manner that scholars of rhetoric do not merely consider an orator’s words, but also his delivery, body language and other mannerisms, the discussion of television as a rhetorical text must take into account all the features that are involved in rendering it a text capable of persuasion. In the book *Television Discourse*, Nuria Lorenzo-Dus notes that “camera work, background music, screen graphics, language, voice quality, intonation, spatial arrangements in studio sets and performers attire are all treated as meaning-making semiotic resources” (2009: 5), and hence play a role in how a television programme

communicates its message. Thus, when one performs a rhetorical analysis on television, one must draw on the same rhetorical proofs that one would for any other text, and then apply them in a way that is uniquely suited to the medium. An example of this can be seen if one considers the *ethos*, *pathos* and *logos* proofs. With regard to the *ethos* proof, which deals with a speaker's ethical appeal or credibility, elements of television presentation such as "paralinguistic features (i.e. body language, gesture, vocal variation) or graphological features (i.e. layout, graphics, illustration)" are used by television presenters to persuade the audience of their credibility, trustworthiness and goodwill" (Cockcroft & Cockcroft, 2005: 28 – 29). In this regard, Cockcroft and Cockcroft suggest that in the same way that a speaker's character is a critical consideration when it comes to his or her ability to be persuasive, a programme's 'character'- namely its look, feel and sound - are also to be considered when analysing the ways in which it attempts to be persuasive. Similarly, when it comes to *pathos*, which a speaker would use to appeal to the audience's emotions, the medium of television has unique ways in which it employs this proof. This can be through striking visuals, which can shock or delight the viewer, music, which creates a certain mood, and of course the words used. The third proof, *logos*, which is based on presenting an argument that relies on sound reasoning, can be observed through television employing certain story-telling techniques that are not used in other mediums. Television can rely on elements such as written and spoken words, visuals, music and graphics to tell a range of stories. Through certain conventions that are typical of the different television genres, one is able to tell stories logically in a way that could not happen with other forms of media.

Similarly, it is not difficult to see how the five canons of rhetoric can be observed when it comes to television. The invention stage or *topoi*, "is the conceiving of topics either true or probable, which may make one's cause appear probable" (Quintilian, 2002: 13). In television this is when the programme's producers come up with ideas and undertake the necessary research. The second stage is arrangement or *dispositio* which involves the "distribution of the topics which have been thus conceived with regular order" (Quintilian, 2002: 13). In television this relates to the arrangement of the aspects of a programme so that viewers can follow it easily. This includes an opening jingle, a welcome and introduction from the host, a rundown of what can be expected on that particular edition of the programme and so forth. The third stage is the elocution or style. This is akin to the personality, persona or image that a text exudes. In television this refers to the feel that a particular programme has, from the jovial and youth-filled feel of a game show, to the more sombre and serious feel of a current

affairs programme. The fourth stage is the delivery, which is “a regulating of the voice and body in a manner suitable to the dignity of the subjects spoken of and of the language employed” (Quintilian, 2002: 13). In television this would be the manner in which the programme’s presenter actually delivers the content. The final stage is the memory or *memoria*, and it relates to “the lasting sense in the mind of the viewer of the matters and words corresponding to the reception of these topics” (Quintilian, 2004: 13). In television this can be a quirky opening or closing jingle or phrase, which soon becomes synonymous with a particular show, and which viewers will remember long after the programme has ended.

The above demonstrates that television is indeed a text where the modes of rhetoric, as well as the canons of rhetoric can be observed. This means that television can be analysed rhetorically. Now that the general applicability of the discipline of rhetoric to the medium of television has been shown, the dissertation will discuss its relevance specifically to television news.

3.3 Television News Bulletins as Rhetorical Texts

At the crux of performing a rhetorical analysis on television news is an assumption that this genre possesses characteristics that makes it possible for it to be analysed through rhetorical techniques. A number of scholars have written about this. Kenneth Burke (1950: 22 – 23) notes in *The Rhetoric of Motives*, that “*Rhetoric* deals with the possibilities of classification in its partisan aspects; it considers the ways in which individuals are at odds with one another, or become identified with groups more or less at odds with one another” (italics included in text). The implication then is that individuals or groups can negotiate their views. That is precisely what happens when people watch television news, since television news bulletins are supposed to depict reality, viewers negotiate what they see on the screen versus what their daily reality is. Michael Woal supports this line of thinking when he writes “[t]o the extent that television viewing involves confrontations with ideological frameworks toward which viewers must negotiate a stance, it is a rhetorical activity” (1982: 32). Thus, each broadcaster deliberately selects the stories it will cover, and then reports on them in such a way as to position itself as having a credible version of the day’s events.

Television news programmes make use of certain conventions to ensure that they persuade viewers of the credibility of the version of events broadcast. As with other rhetorical texts, the purpose behind television news is not merely to entertain and inform. Television news seeks to persuade audiences that its version of events is the correct one. In countries where broadcasters are evidently split along ideological lines - Republican versus Democrat, right-wing versus left-wing - each newscast seeks to persuade its viewers that its ideological stance on an issue is the correct one.

The South African television news landscape is currently dominated by three newscasters: the SABC, eNCA and ANN7. These agencies are split according to language, public and commercial broadcasting, as well as free-to-air versus pay-TV. There is no stated ideological divide, but one can pick subtle differences up in the respective perspectives embraced by these broadcasters. These perspectives compete in the mind of the viewer for the ultimate position of being viewed as depicting the most credible and informed version of events. They, like other rhetorical texts, seek to persuade in this regard. According to Aristotle, it is this characteristic of setting out to persuade that qualifies a text to be considered to be rhetorically sound. Aristotle notes that the discipline of rhetoric in its strictest sense is:

“concerned with the modes of persuasion. Persuasion is clearly a type of demonstration, since we are most fully persuaded when we consider a thing to have been demonstrated.” (Aristotle, 1994: 5).

In the case of television news bulletins, the demonstration that must be made is that the particular broadcaster’s version of events is the most credible.

But what of the highly esteemed news value of objectivity, where the news is supposed to be balanced and without bias? Surely, if all news is broadcast so that it is factual and objective, there will not be a need for a broadcaster to persuade viewers that its bulletin is the most credible? Scholars such as Peter White address this question when they note that even though media “claims a special epistemological status for its texts, asserting that, at least in principle, the news report is factual, disinterested, impersonal and objective...Media theorists, of course, usually regard news reporting as value laden and ultimately ideological” (White, 2000: 379). Inherent in the way television news bulletins are structured are features that make it impossible for these broadcasts to be completely without bias and be totally balanced. Firstly, the fact that there are an infinite number of stories that could be covered in any given bulletin, but only around twenty actually make it into the evening news, shows that there is already a bias in the selection process. Secondly, when it comes to balance, there are an

infinite number of angles and voices that could be used to cover stories, yet because each news report is limited to about a minute and a half, only a few voices can be afforded the opportunity to articulate their view, thus leading to the conclusion that in practice, it is impossible for news reports to be perfectly balanced and perfectly objective. There are certain conventions that are applied by news broadcasters in an endeavour to mitigate against this, but because of the selection process involved in deciding which stories will be included in the bulletin, and which angle these will take, the implication is that news broadcasts will always fall short of the journalistic ideal of perfect objectivity and balance. This then means that the manner in which a particular broadcaster chooses to cover a certain story, and how they go about deciding on which stories to cover in the first place, is part of their strategy of coming across as the most credible.

It has thus been argued above that by endeavouring to persuade viewers of their credibility, newscasters employ the tools of rhetoric. The dissertation will now provide a more detailed explanation of how the modes of rhetoric given by Aristotle, can be observed in television news broadcasts.

3.4 Aristotle's Rhetoric and Television News

As Aristotle notes,

“Of the modes of persuasion furnished by the spoken word there are three kinds. The first kind depends on the personal character of the speaker; the second on putting the audience into a certain frame of mind; the third on the proof, or apparent proof, provided by the words of the speech itself” (1994: 8).

When it comes to television news, all three modes are present. The orator, or orators, refers to the news anchors and reporters. The text refers to the news bulletin, encapsulating the words and visuals used. The audience refers to the viewers. There are a number of differences that arise, however, from the traditional rhetorical setup where a single orator addresses a group of people who are in the room with him or her. Television news, by virtue of being disseminating through a specific type of technology, has characteristics that make the manner in which it employs the modes of rhetoric, unique.

3.4.1 Orator

Firstly, unlike a public address where the speaker has to build rapport with the audience through his mannerisms and body language, for a news bulletin to be persuasive, the burden of conveying credibility lies with the news anchor and/or reporter. Television news anchors need to come across as authoritative, well informed and relatable in order for the news they are delivering to be deemed credible. They are more than just the face and voice that reads the news; they are the authority figures that deliver the news that the audience ‘needs’ to know, and their credibility has a direct bearing on how credible viewers deem the entire news package to be. It is for this reason that most studies on television news pay due consideration to the role of the anchor and reporter in rendering the news presentation persuasive.

Deliberate choices are made in finding someone who the public will deem as credible, authoritative and relatable. Donald Horton and Richard Wohl conducted research which demonstrates that one of the major draw cards for viewers to watch a particular newscast is the “para-social relationship” that they develop with on-air personalities (1956, 19). This means that people will watch news, not just because of the knowledge they gain from the information presented, but also because of their affinity to the particular anchor presenting the bulletin or a specific journalist relaying the news report. Describing the characteristics of news anchors and reporters, Arthur Berger says that they “are, as a rule, highly moral and responsible professionals who do the best they can to avoid being manipulated, [and] to offer accurate information” (2012: 183).

Bearing this in mind, then, it is clear that the appointment of specific news anchors and reporters forms a strategic part of a broadcaster’s endeavours to position itself as a credible news source. With regard to the English news bulletin on SABC 3, one cannot assume that that the gender and racial demographics that make up the presenters on this flagship bulletin is a coincidence. The fact that there is an Indian woman - Vabakshnee Chetty, who is a well-known television and radio news anchor for the SABC; Peter Ngoro - a black man who has over two decades of experience in public and commercial broadcasting; and a white woman, Francis Heard, who was the main economics anchor for the rival eNCA, shows a deliberate attempt to represent the multi-racial and diverse “rainbow nation” that makes up South Africa. On the other hand, if one considers the weight that rhetoric places on the credibility of the orator, one can rightly assume that these anchors have been deliberately chosen

because they come across as being credible and representative, and as such their years of experience in broadcasting, coupled with their racial and gender diversity, boost the broadcaster's credibility and appeal in the minds of its viewers.

Once a broadcaster has appointed the anchors that it thinks will look and sound like the type of people its viewers might deem to be credible, it then becomes the job of these men and women to persuade viewers to trust them. This trust, according to Cockcroft and Cockcroft, is built by “impressions of someone's moral strength (*arête*), benevolence (*eunoia*) and what we might translate as ‘constructive competence; or the ability to offer shrewd, practical but principled advice (*phronesis*)” (2005: 16). There are a number ways that an anchor attempts to build trust with the audience. These involve mainly body language and facial expressions, and several other conventions that are used in the medium of television. The first is the well-known convention of a news anchor looking directly at the camera when delivering the news while maintaining ‘eye-contact’ with the viewer, as opposed to giving the address while facing away at a slight angle, which is usually the convention for interviews. Scholars say this convention of making ‘eye-contact’ gives the viewer the impression that the anchor is addressing him or her directly, and plays a role in fostering trust. Paul Frosh's study, “The Face of Television”, which looks at, among others, “the primacy of the human face as a televisual image” (2009: 87), discusses how the face has remained a central image in television, and explores the connotative meaning of addressing people directly by looking straight into the camera (Frosh, 2009: 90 – 91). In this vein, Robert Vianello's study, “The Power Politics of “Live” Television” also explores the “symbiotic relationship between the anchor person and the social institution of the news” (1985: 38). It argues that this is grounded in “the credibility gained by the news in being aligned with a familiar face whom we know is ‘live’” (Vianello, 1985: 38). Other conventions such as the news reader extending a ‘warm’ welcome and sincere ‘goodnight’, at the beginning and end of the programme respectively, give the impression that he or she is someone we can relate to, and who is part of our everyday lives, therefore we can trust what he or she has to say.

News anchors also endeavour to be persuasive through certain facial gestures and body movements. A noteworthy study on this is “Sex, Lies, and Videotape: Sexual Innuendo in Producing and Presenting Television News” by Anthony Friedmann (1994). In the paper Friedmann argues that “[a]lthough much is written about television news, there is little discussion of the way body language has become part of the idiom of to-camera

communication techniques” (1994: 51). Understanding the subtle messages conveyed by these conventions and gestures is akin to understanding how the actions employed by a speaker giving a public address, such as the raising of hands, looking down or waving at the audience, assist him or her in being persuasive. The correct use of these gestures has as much bearing on the speech’s ability to persuade the audience as the actual content of the address.

Frosh’s study goes a little further and explores another popular convention in television news, namely that of news anchors speaking to millions of people while in the address referring to an individual (2009: 91). Frosh discusses how this is due to the context in which television is consumed – even though you may be watching it with several people in the same room:

“the newscasters deictic gaze transforms this distant plurality of addressees into the proximate singular viewer, focusing the viewer’s attention as both a condition and an effect of being addressed: our eyes “meet” those of the newsreader (it takes sustained effort to look at the screen when a newsreader addresses us without looking at his or her eyes directly), and we are brought “face-to-face” with our distant interlocutor” (Frosh, 2009: 91).

In this regard, Nuria Lorenzo-Dus also notes that “[b]roadcasting...[has] to talk to millions as though it were talking to one” (2009: 57). This implies that although the presenter is well aware that thousands, if not millions of people are watching him or at any given time, he or she has to address them as though they were only one person. As Lorenzo-Dus notes, “each viewer [has] to feel that what he or she [is] seeing and hearing [is] addressed to him or her directly and individually, even though it [is] clearly intended for anyone who happened to be tuned in” (2009: 57). This convention has an impact on the presenter’s attempt to persuade the audience, because the language that is used to persuade an individual differs from that used when trying to persuade a crowd. As Nicholas Abercrombie writes, “[a]nnouncers, weathermen and women, newsreaders, talk show hosts and many others face the camera directly and are, therefore, giving the illusion of having an intimate, direct, domestic conversation with the person” (1996: 18). Even though they know that they are speaking to scores of people at any given moment, presenters do not address the viewers as ‘you millions of viewers at home’, as though they were on the podium delivering an address to the masses; rather the address is to ‘you at home’, alone or with a few people known to you, as though the presenter is a trusted family friend, there to give you the latest news. The implication is that despite the physical distance that exists between the orator and the audience, an impression of physical and emotional proximity is created, which affords the anchor and journalist a certain level of authority and influence, as they tell you the latest news. This proximity plays into

the issue of credibility because it creates an impression that the news is being delivered by someone who the viewers ‘know’, and who they can thus trust, and ultimately fulfils the important rhetorical requirement of creating rapport between the orator and the audience.

Another unique characteristic of television news, which makes this genre an interesting one to study as a rhetorical text, particularly where the orator’s role in being persuasive is concerned, is the fact that television is a one-sided medium, and the ‘speaker’ namely the anchor or journalist, is not able to gauge the audience’s response to his address, because he is in a different physical space from the people being spoken to. This is different from traditional rhetorical contexts where the speaker addresses an audience almost face to face, and is able to gauge instantaneously from their responses whether the techniques of persuasion he or she is using are in fact effective. With the advent of social media platforms such as *Twitter* and *Facebook*, one way around this has been for the news presenter to engage audiences on these platforms in real time, and address the issues they raise almost instantaneously. But the interaction between speaker and audience through these mediums still faces the barrier of physical distance, and this influences the manner in which the news anchor or journalist employs the techniques of rhetoric.

Another dynamic that makes television news bulletins such unique rhetorical texts, is that unlike normal public addresses, where a speaker’s charisma is the primary way in which a speech is given ‘character’, the entire packaging of the 30 minutes or hour long newscast communicates the ‘character’ of the bulletin, and hence has a bearing on whether the final product is deemed to be credible or not. From the camera angles used, through to the studio setup and the transitions between what is happening in studio and the pre-packaged news report inserts, there is a deliberate choice by the producers of the programme to convey certain messages of authenticity and credibility that will compel audiences to deem the particular television channel’s version of the daily news as credible. An example of this is if one compares the quirky brightly coloured graphics and backgrounds used on ANN7, with the more clear-cut and professional blue coloured backgrounds that dominate the studio from which SABC broadcasts its news. Just like the selection of the personalities that anchor the news bulletins, these ‘preferences’ are not random, and they play into the image that the broadcaster wants to convey in its attempts to be deemed as a credible news source. In this regard, Lorenzo-Dus notes that “images, sound and words in live news create the impression that viewers are accessing the here-and-now of a given slice of the socio-historical world,

rather than a script thereof' (2009: 63). As mentioned above, a thorough analysis of the images, sounds and graphics falls outside the scope of this dissertation, but these elements need to be mentioned because they are part of how SABC 3 sets about giving the impression that it is a credible source of news.

In his paper on the aesthetic and rhetorical modes of experiencing television, Woal compares the use of these techniques in television to the use of techniques of persuasion in poetry. He writes "[t]elevisual techniques may be fore-grounded in relation to a natural audio-visual code in the same sense that poetic devices are fore-grounded against the standard language" (1982: 31 – 32). This is important to note because these techniques must be considered when performing a rhetorical analysis on the news bulletin as a whole. These aspects are not merely a matter of aesthetics, but are critical components in how the television news channel makes its argument for being a credible source of news. And while these features do not form a key part of the aspects to be analysed in this dissertation, their importance must still be borne in mind, and an analysis of case studies of exactly how these texts attempt to be persuasive rhetorically, can perhaps be an area of future research.

The conventions discussed above are not unique to a particular broadcaster, and are generally used by news broadcasters as standard practice. They have been highlighted here because they form an important part of what one would consider when analysing how a particular broadcaster sets about to persuade viewers that it is a credible news source, and they help one understand how television news bulletins function as rhetorical texts. Thus, it has been shown that in the same manner that the charisma and character of an orator have been named by Aristotle as one of the key modes of persuasion that one should consider in a rhetorical address, the perceived credibility, knowledge, and authority of a news anchor have a bearing on whether viewers deem the news bulletin to be credible or not. It has also been briefly shown above that even though the conventions around the characteristics of the orator in television news differ from those in traditional rhetorical contexts, one is able make allowances for these, in the quest to analyse television news reports as rhetorical texts. Further, it has also been shown that because other elements, such as the graphics and music, also play a role in giving character to a newscast, these should also be considered. The dissertation will now consider the second mode of persuasion, namely the audience. In looking at this aspect, one must consider how the identity of the audience that watches a news bulletin influences the tools and techniques that the broadcaster will employ when attempting

to be persuasive. Of the three modes of rhetoric, this is the one that the dissertation will pay the least attention to because a thorough investigation of this aspect would require that a study where the actual SABC 3 news audience is interviewed, something that falls outside the scope of this research.

3.4.2 Audience

When it comes to examining how the mode of persuasion of the ‘hearer’ relates to television news as a rhetorical text, the question one must answer is whether television news reports are texts that are capable of being deemed as persuasive by viewers. In this respect the dissertation will seek to discuss whether television audiences simply perceive the news as ‘fact’, and therefore view it as the ‘absolute truth’, or whether they negotiate what they see and hear, and weigh this up against their understanding of reality. A factual text that does not provoke audiences to reason, and thus be persuaded or dissuaded, cannot be deemed to be rhetorical because at its core, rhetoric is about persuasion. Thus, if viewers see the news as ‘fact’, it is pointless performing a rhetorical analysis on them because you cannot persuade someone when they view something as factual. If, on the other hand it can be shown that viewers do not take the material presented to them in the news as a given, and actively decide whether or not they deem it to be credible, then the issue of persuasion becomes meaningful.

With regard to whether audiences can indeed be persuaded by television news reports, Kenneth Burke notes that rhetoric “considers the ways in which individuals are at odds with one another, or become identified with groups more or less at odds with one another” (1950: 22 - 23). The implication is that individuals or groups can negotiate their views on certain ideologies that are communicated in television news reports; they do not take these at face value. Since television is supposed to depict reality, viewers negotiate what they see on the screen versus what their daily reality is. Woal supports this line of thinking when he writes that “[t]o the extent that television viewing involves confrontations with ideological frameworks toward which viewers must negotiate a stance, it is a rhetorical activity” (1982: 32). Thus because television programmes, including television news, do provide these ideological confrontations, they exhibit the characteristics of rhetorical texts.

One of the aspects of the audience that must be noted, when considering television news as rhetorical texts, is the demographic of the people who are watching. Understanding who the intended audience of a rhetorical text is matters, because the demographics of the audience has a direct impact on how the orator delivers his or her address. In traditional rhetoric, this was an important consideration because it had a direct impact on how the orator would deliver his address. With regard to news bulletins, factors such as the level of education of the audience, their knowledge of the subject, their age, gender and racial breakdown, all influence how they will interpret the news as it is presented to them, and hence has a bearing on how the newscasters attempt to be persuasive and credible. SABC 3 has around 14.9 million weekly viewers (SABC, 2014). Most of these are isiXhosa and isiZulu speakers, which is typical of the South African population makeup. However of the three SABC free-to-air channels, SABC 3 has the highest percentage of English speaking viewers (13%, compared to 8% for SABC 1 and 10% for SABC 2). The SABC 3 English news bulletin attracts around 560-thousand viewers every night, and it has the highest percentage of middle to upper class viewers who are literate and employed of the three SABC channels. According to Berger, “[n]ews listeners tend to be middle-class people. Those in the proletariat (who live in poverty) have relatively little interest in the news” (Berger, 2012: 185). In South Africa, the news bulletins aired on the respective SABC channels tend to be among the top ten most viewed programmes, garnering an audience size of around 1.7 million between all three channels combined (SABC, 2014).

Thus, this section has discussed the audience to which the SABC 3 news bulletin is targeted by noting that it is a predominantly English speaking and middle class audience. This has a bearing on what types of stories will appeal to these viewers, and the type of reporting that will come across as being credible to them. For example, because this group tends to be educated, news reports that are too simplistic and that do not show signs of deeply probing issues may not be deemed as credible. The final rhetorical mode that must be considered is the text, which in this instance refers to the news stories. In the case of television news, this will include the audio and the visual aspects of the story, both of which are crucial in the packaging of the television news.

3.4.3 Text

One of the critical aspects that require discussion, when analysing television news reports as rhetorical texts, is the manner in which these reports are written, that is to say the structure they follow. Television news reports fall into a genre of texts that does not follow the traditional format of rhetorical argument because they do not “relate concepts with each other explicitly” (Brandt, 1970: 255). A television news report is, in essence, a text that lists certain facts relating to a particular news story. These facts are not necessarily structured in a way that makes an argument; rather the facts are included in the news report as long as they are deemed to be relevant to the story at hand. Brandt classifies this type of text as “reportorial” because “it frequently presents itself as high-level reporting” (1970: 256). Instead of following the traditional rhetorical argumentation format by relating ideas and formulating an argument based on these, reportorial writing “explicates a central term” and tries to link seemingly unrelated pieces of information together (Brandt, 1970: 256). If one were to construct a reportorial text on South Africa, for example, one could include seemingly unrelated facts on the country’s history, geography and racial demographics, and the link would simply be that these topics provide facts about the country. A traditional rhetorical text, on the other hand, would argue a particular view on a matter, and each fact that is included would relate to the others in a manner that bolsters the arguments being made. Therefore, a traditional rhetorical text on the above topic would be one that argues that South Africa is the best country to live in, for example, and while it could be based on the same facts as the reportorial text, such as history, geography and racial demographics, it would link these together to substantiate a central argument. Thus in as far as news reports simply ‘report’ on an issue, they fall into the reportorial text category.

But the reportorial nature of these texts must not be taken to imply that they lack the ability to be persuasive. Reportorial texts are persuasive in as far as they influence and advance a certain frame or view point on a particular subject (Brandt, 1970: 256). Brandt illustrates this by citing the example of the Vietnamese war, noting that reportorial writing would seek to persuade on the matter by saying “Let’s look at the Vietnamese war (or human nature, or whatever) *from this point of view*” (Brandt, 1970: 256 emphasis mine). Thus, while not taking a particular position on an issue, a reportorial text relays a specific version and selection of facts about the issue, and in doing posits a particular view, and through this view

sets out to be persuasive. This characteristic is applicable to news reports because for any story there are an infinite number of facts that a journalist could choose to report on, yet through a process of elimination, they write their news reports to highlight the aspects of the story that they deem to be most important. In doing this, they endeavour to persuade viewers that their version is reliable and relevant. This feature of a reportorial text shows that these texts make their arguments based on what they choose to include and exclude in the endeavour to be persuasive.

Further in order to keep the audience's attention, the report needs to give the impression that its argument is 'going somewhere', and is not merely listing facts. Writing about this, Brandt notes that "[t]he reader agrees to follow the line of discourse laid out by the writer as long as it promises to get somewhere, which means as long as it seems to be moving" (1970: 261). When a text follows the traditional rhetorical argument format, the orator achieves this by building on the subsequent points of the argument. He or she starts by giving the *exordium* and introducing the claim at hand. He or she then gives the *narratio* by listing the facts or examples to be discussed. The third step is the *divisio* where the material is broken up into workable parts, and then the *confirmatio* where the proof is presented. The fifth step is the *confutatio*, where the speaker deals with opposing arguments, before the final stage of the *peroratio* where he or she sums up and rounds off the speech. These steps of traditional rhetoric keep the argument 'moving forward', and so a similar momentum needs to somehow be created in a reportorial text. For a reportorial text, the 'argument' is kept moving by "inventing pseudo-connections" between the different points (Brandt, 1970: 261). Brandt says this can be achieved through "the manipulation of various devices, some strictly rhetorical and others not, to give an illusion of either the temporal connectedness of narrative or the logical connectedness of argument" (Brandt, 1970: 261). Revisiting the example of the report on South Africa, for instance, one would link the history of South Africa, with the current racial demographics, and then link the topic of racial demographics with the geography of the country, to create a semblance that these 'facts' are somehow related, and that they posit a certain point of view of the country.

Thus this section has discussed the unique characteristics of television news reports as rhetorical texts. It has argued that despite not following the traditional format of rhetorical arguments, these texts are capable of being persuasive. It has also discussed some of the

unique features of these texts that render them as effective modes of persuasion, as described by Aristotle. The dissertation will now proceed to explore the concept of a ‘rhetorical situation’ and examine how it applies to television news.

3.5 The Rhetorical Situation

According to Lloyd Bitzer, the notion of ‘the rhetorical situation’, refers to “the context in which speakers or writers create rhetorical discourse” (1992: 1). His essay on the topic expounds this notion as

“a natural context of persons, events, objects, relations, and an exigence which strongly invites utterance; this invited utterance participates naturally in the situation, is in many instances necessary to the completion of situational activity, and by means of its participation with situation obtains its meaning and its rhetorical character” (Bitzer, 1992: 4 – 5).

Thus it can be seen that according to Bitzer, a rhetorical situation arises whenever an event unfolds, and as a result of that event, something is said or written to help people interpret, understand or contextualise it. When it comes to television news, the rhetorical situation can be viewed as the set of circumstances that give rise to the ‘story’ being covered in the first place. In this regard, the rhetorical situation is best observed in how the story is introduced, namely in the lead. The lead of a story says a great deal about who or what is deemed to be of utmost importance. White notes, “the opening stage is said to provide a summary of the key elements of the report to set out what is central or most “newsworthy” about the material under consideration” (1998: 383). This then informs the rest of the language that will characterise the story, as well as who has been identified as the main character, and who has been identified as the victim, if there is one.

Bitzer posits that there are three elements to a rhetorical situation. First is the *exigence* which he defines as “an imperfection marked by urgency; it is a defect, an obstacle, something waiting to be done, a thing which is other than it should be” (1992: 6). When it comes to television news the exigence is akin to the news values that lead to story being covered in the first place; these include factors such as negativity, timeliness, superlativeness and prominence. In media terms, news values are those aspects of a story that make it worthy of being included in the news bulletin. According to Bitzer, therefore, these would be the ‘defects’ or aspects of a situation that are not as they should be. The second element of a

rhetorical situation is the rhetorical audience, which Bitzer says “consists only of those persons who are capable of being influenced by discourse and of being mediators of change” (1992: 7). The characteristics of this audience have been expounded on in the preceding section, and the link between the viewers of television news and the rhetorical audience as described by Bitzer has been demonstrated there. The final characteristic of a rhetorical situation is said to be “a set of constraints made up of persons, events, objects, and relations which are parts of the situation because they have the power to constrain decision and action needed to modify the exigence” (Bitzer, 1992: 8). These constraints relate to factors that would prevent or limit the audience from deciding and acting accordingly. These can be events, people and intangible factors, such as social constraints. A discussion on these factors, in relation to television news, falls outside the scope of this dissertation as it would require audience-based research; the focus of this particular thesis remains on the way in which SABC uses rhetorical devices in its English news reports.

Bitzer’s posit of the rhetorical situation has been the subject of critique from a number of scholars. Most notably, Richard Vatz’s paper “The Myth of the Rhetorical Situation which argues that

“[i]f one accepts Bitzer's position that the presence of rhetorical discourse obviously indicates the presence of a rhetorical situation, then we ascribe little responsibility to the rhetor with respect to what he has chosen to give salience. On the other hand if we view the communication of an event as a choice, interpretation, and translation, the rhetor's responsibility is of supreme concern” (1973: 155).

Further, Vatz (1973: 159) posits that “situations obtain their character from the rhetoric which surrounds them or creates them”. In relation to television news reports, this dissertation will demonstrate that there is scope for the ideas posited by both these scholars. Drawing on the stories that are analysed, the dissertation will show that in some contexts, seemingly obscure stories rise to prominence simply because of how they are reported on in the news, and it will also show how links are made with news worthier items to elevate the importance of these stories. The dissertation will also show that in some cases the newsworthiness of a story results in a certain rhetoric developing around that story, which would not have developed had it not been such an important news item. The analysis of television news reports using rhetorical tools thus shows that there is a need to find a more nuanced notion that expounds on Bitzer’s notion of rhetorical situations, that will take into consideration critiques such as the one provided by Vatz.

3.6 The importance of context

In order to avoid overstating the influence of media on the choices that viewers make, it must be stated that there are studies that show the impact of television news to be negligible when it comes to public opinion. These studies lay greater emphasis on the role played by other institutions such as family, church, government and communities in shaping how people think on certain issues. This is an age old debate and no clear conclusion has been reached. But what is certain is that scholars cannot completely negate the ability of television to persuade viewers on certain issues. They may disagree on the extent of the persuasion, however they all agree that there is an element of persuasion. This dissertation leans more heavily towards focusing on how newscasts persuade and influence audiences that they are a credible source of news. The onus is on the newscast to present itself as 'worthy' of being watched by viewers, and further as 'worthy' of giving due consideration to the stories that are presented, because the news reports come across as credible. This, however, does not necessarily mean that the audiences will eventually agree with the stance of a particular story, but that audiences will consider it as being presented in such a way as to render it credible.

Despite setting out to be the 'watchdog' of society, exposing how citizens are exploited by the state or 'big business', the media is an important part of the established political and economic system of the day. In a capitalistic and liberal society, the media is forced to operate in those confines. In the paper that explores that coverage of the 1992 Los Angeles Riots, Amitava Kumar (1992: 1311) concludes that "[t]he media, as the mouth-piece of the establishment, has not failed to exploit the Los Angeles riots. While the smoke was still rising from the gutted neighbourhoods, the talk-shows on TV were already trivialising the issues." Again, this eludes to the fact that television journalists are greatly influenced by the society and environment in which they operate. Further, the organisations they work for are shaped, in part, by the context in which they exist. This has a great bearing on firstly, what is considered to be newsworthy, and secondly how news is reported.

3.7 Conclusion

This chapter has demonstrated that television is a rhetorical text, and more specifically, that television news is a genre that possesses features that makes it possible for it to be analysed rhetorically. By demonstrating how the modes of rhetoric and the five canons of rhetoric are evident in this medium, a case has been made that the concepts that apply to the discipline of rhetoric can be used to analyse television news reports. The dissertation will now expound on the methodology that it has employed in performing a rhetorical analysis on SABC 3's news reports.

4. RATIONALE OF METHODS

4.1 Introduction

As has been stated above, the purpose of the dissertation is to examine how SABC 3's flagship English news bulletin succeeds and/or fails to persuade viewers that it is a credible source of news. As such, the textual analysis methodology has been employed, using Aristotle's rhetorical analysis techniques. When a textual analysis is performed, "an educated guess at some of the most likely interpretations that might be made of that text" is made (McKee, 2003: 1). Alan McKee explains that the textual analysis methodology draws on a number of other methodologies, "many of which are mutually contradictory and incompatible" (2003: 2). Because textual analysis lends itself to being utilised to understand how sense is made by both those who compose and produce a text, as well as the audiences that subsequently engage with it (Caws, 1986), this methodology is well suited for the analysis of news reports. For the purposes of this dissertation, the emphasis will be on the sense-making process from the perspective of those who write up the news bulletins, rather than the audience. To begin with, an understanding of what is meant by 'text', with regard to this methodology, will be discussed.

4.2 Textual Analysis

In defining what qualifies as a text, McKee notes that a text is "something that we make meaning from" (2003: 4). This therefore covers a wide range of 'things' from books and magazines, through to clothes, signs, and music - anything that requires "an *interpretation* of something's *meaning*" (McKee, 2003: 4, italics included in text). This definition of a text implies that the contexts wherein a text is produced, as well as where it is consumed, both play an important role in understanding the meaning that can be made. An example McKee discusses is the difference in response and interpretation that a picture of a fat woman would be subjected to by an American audience versus a Nigerian one. In America, where obesity is seen as unattractive, the picture would most likely be associated with something negative and undesirable. If this is contrasted to how the image would be read in the Nigerian society,

where a fat woman is seen as being happy and fertile and thus more desirable, McKee argues that one can see the importance of context in the sense-making process. This is important to note because while textual analysis focuses on interpreting the text at hand, and not necessarily the merits of the dynamics that cause it to be interpreted in a particular manner, context must always be considered in order to perform a thorough analysis.

Finally, before discussing fully how this dissertation proceeds to use textual analysis in analysing how the SABC 3 flagship English news bulletin utilises rhetorical techniques to persuade viewers of its credibility as a news source, the desirability of this methodology for this dissertation warrants discussion. As a post-structuralist technique, McKee cites the fact that textual analysis is neither “quantitative”, nor it is “iterable” (2003: 118 - 119). These characteristics may cause some to see textual analysis as too subjective, and hence dismiss it as unreliable. If this dissertation were examining more concrete aspects around the news bulletin, such as how many crime or politics stories were covered, how much time was devoted to the respective stories, and the gender and racial representation, then this subjectivity would indeed be problematic. However, this study seeks to do something quite different. According to McKee, “[w]e interpret texts (films, television programmes, magazines, advertisements, clothes, graffiti and so on) in order to try and obtain a sense of the ways in which, in particular cultures at particular times, people make sense of the world around them” (2003: 1). Thus, it makes sense that if an understanding is to be gained of how SABC 3 uses its news reports to try and persuade viewers that it is a credible news source, these reports need to be analysed textually. Thus, while the conclusions made do bear the context in mind, they are subjective to the author, and it is in fact encouraged that other scholars who hold a similar interest, critique and comment on the conclusions of this dissertation, so that the body of research which focuses specifically on South African television news and rhetoric, might be richer. Now that the rationale of methods has been discussed, the process of the analysis will now be elaborated on.

4.3 Methodology

This dissertation will employ rhetorical tools of analysis to perform a textual analysis on some of the news reports that were broadcast on the SABC 3 English evening news bulletin between the March 8, 2013 and April 7, 2013. This 30-day time frame was chosen because it

was deemed long enough to be able to monitor the development of various news stories from when they first appeared in the public domain, to when they were finally resolved, in most cases. Further, the specific months were chosen because there were no notable events that could have skewed the coverage. Often, when there is an election, or major court case or even a natural disaster, coverage by the media takes on a sense of urgency that is not typical of the day-to-day reporting that normally occurs. In this time period, there was nothing particularly out of the norm, so the manner in which news reports were filed can be assumed to correctly reflect the manner in which stories are generally covered by the SABC. For the period March 8, 2013 - April 7, 2013, 1080 minutes of footage was recorded, around 205 distinct news stories were identified, and several hundred news reports were filed. From these figures, it is clear that it would be impossible to analyse all the footage and engage in a meaningful discussion on its persuasive attributes at the same time. In order to make sure the analysis is meaningful, the stories to be analysed have been narrowed down as follows:

4.3.1 News Stories to be Analysed

1. Internal Developments with the SABC
2. Upgrades to President Jacob Zuma's Home in Nkandla
3. The Death of Ficksburg Protestor, Andries Tatane
4. The Death of Thirteen South African Soldiers in the Central African Republic
5. The Detention of Cyril Karabus in the United Arab Emirates
6. De Doorns Bus Crash
7. Hugo Chavez Dies
8. Human Rights Day
9. Kenyan Elections
10. Marikana Commission of Inquiry
11. Nelson Mandela Hospitalised
12. Tensions between North Korea and South Korea
13. Oscar Pistorius Murder Trial
14. Changes in the Price of Fuel
15. Election of Pope Francis

The analysis section of the dissertation will look at each of these stories and discuss how the SABC used the tools of rhetoric in the coverage. The analysis will begin by noting the background of the story and any developments that took place in the time period under consideration, to provide the reader with the context in which they occurred. It will then discuss how the SABC covered the story, looking at the exigence that gave rise to it being

covered, the news values on which the coverage was pegged, the visuals and interviews that accompanied the reporter's script, as well as the communicative frames that were used in the report. It will then analyse what genre and proof of rhetoric were used in reporting, and finally conclude with a discussion on whether these elements helped or hampered the SABC in coming across as a credible source of news in terms of its coverage. Before proceeding to analyse the stories named above, consideration must be given to two media concepts which have an impact on the stories chosen for analysis, namely, news values and communicative frames of reporting.

4.4 News Values

As has been stated, the selection of the stories that are analysed in this dissertation was based on their perceived newsworthiness. Newsworthiness is strongly linked to the idea of news values which Allan Bell defines as “values by which one “fact” is judged more newsworthy than another” (1991: 155), while Monika Bednerek and Helen Caple define them as “factors that take an event into the news” (2012: 39). The notions of newsworthiness and news values are important to this study because they have an impact on how news reports are written, and thus the choice of language and visuals used in the coverage. In this regard, Bednerek and Caple note that “news values are not ‘inherent’ aspects of events or internalized beliefs; they are values that are established by the language and images used” (2012: 39). This will be elaborated on in the section dealing with the respective stories under consideration, however to provide an example, an introductory paragraph in an article that appeared on the SABC news website will be considered:

“The rand extended losses to hit a 10-week low against the dollar on Tuesday as investors anticipated more strikes to further dent confidence in South Africa's contracting economy”. (www.sabcnews.co.za)

By noting that this is a “10-week low” the introduction to the article draws on the news value of superlativeness which highlights the “maximised or intensified aspect of an event” (Bednerek & Caple, 2012: 41). Further by stating that “investors anticipated more strikes” the article demonstrates the news value of timeliness which relies on the “relevance of the event in terms of time” (Bednerek & Caple, 2012: 41). This extract demonstrates that the words used in reporting a story are indicative of the news value or values that underpin it. There are a number of ways in which language can construe news values, including,

“changing the structure of the story to foreground more newsworthy aspects as well as cutting and lexical substitution to make a story more newsworthy” (Bednerek & Caple, 2012: 46). While scholars may differ slightly in characterisations and definitions of the respective news values (see Bednerek & Caple, 2012; Ansel, 2005 as examples), the categories of news values can generally be summarised as follows:

Table 1: News Values Summary (Bednerek & Caple, 2012: 41)

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Negativity: | Negative aspects of an event |
| Timeliness: | The relevance of the event in terms of time |
| Proximity: | The geographical and/or cultural nearness of the event |
| Prominence: | The high status of the individuals (e.g. celebrities, politicians), organisations or nations involved in the event, including quoted sources |
| Consonance: | The extent to which aspects of a story fit in with stereotypes that people may hold about the events and people portrayed in it |
| Impact: | The effects of consequences of an event |
| Novelty: | The unexpected aspects of an event |
| Superlativeness: | The maximized or intensified aspects of an event |
| Personalisation: | The personal or human interest aspects of an event |

Thus with regard to this dissertation, the focus will not primarily be on the actual news events listed above, although the manner in which they unfolded will be considered. Rather, it will be on how the SABC 3 English news reported on these events through its language and image choice, rendering them newsworthy, and how this choice may have served South Africa’s public broadcaster in persuading viewers that its version of these events was credible.

In terms of the tools of rhetoric, the notion of news values is strongly linked to the idea of the exigence that gives rise to a rhetorical situation. ‘Exigence’, as has been discussed, is “an imperfection marked by urgency; it is a defect, an obstacle, something waiting to be done, a thing which is other than it should be” (Bitzer, 1992: 6). This is akin to news values, which are “factors that take an event into the news” (Caple, 2012: 39). These factors are the elements of an event or occurrence that make it unusual such that media deem it worthy of receiving coverage, and hence ‘news worthy’. Given that this dissertation is a rhetorical

analysis of television news, it thus makes sense that these ideas from these two distinct disciplines would come together in this way. The second media studies concept that will be considered relates to communicative reporting frames.

4.5 Communicative Reporting Frames

Cottle and Rai's analysis of television as communicative architecture provides useful insights when analysing the persuasive nature of television as a medium. In their paper, they argue that "that the naturalized...theoretically invisible, communicative architecture of television news serves to display and deliberate conflict and consent in the contemporary world" (2006: 163). They explore the dominant story-lines, which they term 'frames', which are used in television news reporting. Cottle and Rai argue that these "internationally recognisable" frames, including the dominant frame, contest frame, and collective interest frame, have become a "'way of knowing' for news producers, news audiences and news participants alike, practically organizing the production, communication and reception of 'news'" (2006: 163). They argue that the reason for this is that in the coverage of any story, the media are attempting to fulfil several roles which include "providing information and social surveillance; demonstrating independence, balance and impartiality; acting as a critical watchdog; and facilitating public discussion, debate and opinion formation" (2006: 169). This is important to note because such research presupposes that even if journalists and news producers do not approach a story with the intention of covering it in a certain way, it is inevitable that coverage will fall into one of these predetermined reporting frames. The benefit is that these communicative frames make the analysis of news stories easier, as one has a 'template' of how a news story that is classified under a certain frame is expected to develop and how it is reported on. Thus this paper informs the categorisation of the news items to be discussed in this dissertation, as it provides a well-researched and objective way of classifying television news stories for the purpose of analysing them. It must be noted, though, that while it gives a general description of the kinds of news stories that will fall into the respective communicative frames, Cottle and Rai are not prescriptive on how the actual categorisation should be done. They provide a general guide of the type of story that will fall into a certain frame, but do not give specifics of how this should be decided on.

Stemming from this general analysis of news frames, Cottle and Rai (2008) wrote a second paper on communicative frames, this time focused solely on South African television news. They maintain their foundational posit, namely that there are recurring frames that categorise news reports, and they focus on examining how these are evident in the South African television news landscape. In the paper “Television News in South Africa: Mediating an Emerging Democracy”, Cottle and Rai (2008) provide a number of dominant communicative frames that can be found in television news reporting in South Africa. These are ways that journalists structure their news reports. Cottle and Rai draw their conclusions by “analytically identifying, systematically mapping and pursuing into the production domain the repertoire of communicative frames that characterise contemporary South African television news” (2008: 343). These communicative frames will be referred to when performing the rhetorical analysis on the respective news reports, as part of the broader discussion on why these particular stories are considered newsworthy. Below is a table of the frames they identify, and a very brief description of each.

Table 2: Dominant Communicative Frames in South African Television news (Cottle & Rai, 2008)

| <u>Frame</u> | <u>Brief Description</u> |
|-------------------------|--|
| Classic Reporting Frame | -provides information and surveillance of current affairs -framed as being current -usually brief |
| Dominant Frame | -news that is dominated and defined by single external news source -the source’s perspective dominates the communicative frame |
| Contest Frame | -framed in terms of binary opposition with opposing views given approximately equal weight |
| Contention Frame | -similar to contest frame, but involves a plurality of voices and perspective, which may not necessarily have opposing views |
| Investigation Frame | -a highly performative communicative frame which involved journalists going out to investigate, expose and uncover information that would not otherwise be in the public domain -rarely deployed in South African television news |
| Campaigning Frame | -a news outlet declares its stance on an issue or cause and seeks to galvanise sympathies around it beyond the world of journalism |

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| | -rarely deployed in South African television news |
| Community Service Frame | -when news media explicitly advise the audience on what a certain piece of information means and how it will impact their lives |
| Collective Interests Frame | -similar to community service frame where media also elaborate and visualise shared, communal or collective interest through their identification of a presumed ‘common interest’ subject matter |
| Cultural Recognition Frame | -refer to items that represent and symbolise shared values and community ideals |
| Mythic Tales Frame | -displays cultural myths that have resonance for contemporary values -not mainly about imparting new information, but resurrecting pre-existent values and symbols |
| Reportage Frame | -aims to go behind the scenes of the ‘thin’ news reports and provides ‘thick’ descriptions of reality -give its affinity with observational documentary modes |

Similar to the manner in which the notion of ‘news values’ is related to the ‘exigence’, the media studies concept of ‘communicative frames’ is related to the rhetorical studies’ idea of ‘genres’. As has been said above, communicative reporting frames refer to the dominant story-lines that are used when reporting on news stories. The genres of rhetoric refer to the orientation of the rhetorical presentation, namely one that is either accusing or defending, as is the case with the judicial genre, exhorting or dissuading, as is the case with the deliberative genre, or praising or blaming, as is the case with the epideictic genre (Crompton & McAlea, 2000: 32). In the same way that one can tell which genre of rhetoric a text falls into, by observing the manner in which it has been compiled, one can tell which communicative reporting frame has been employed in covering a certain story through the structure of the report. As noted above, this includes considering the slant of the report, the voices included, and the intended purpose. Again, these concepts from these different fields will be shown to be related in this dissertation, which brings them together by employing the tools of rhetoric to ascertain whether SABC 3 news come across as credible in its reporting. Now that the dissertation has considered the notion of news values generally and has also discussed the

idea of the communicative frames of reporting, and has further shown how these two ideas can be linked to the rhetorical notions of exigence and rhetorical genres respectively, the dissertation will briefly discuss the role of images in television news reports.

4.6 The Role of Images

To date, very little research has been done to examine the manner in which the visuals that accompany news reports espouse certain news values. Stuart Hall's 1973 publication, *The Determinations of News Photographs* attempts to do this, using still photographs published in print media. Hall notes that visuals espouse news values by portraying images that are out of the ordinary, sensational, recent, or that feature an important person. Another scholar who has done work in this field, Geoffrey Craig, suggests that there are five news values that can be found in press photography "reference to elite person, composition, personalisation, negativity and conflict/dramatization" (Craig in Bednarek & Caple, 2012: 57). But unlike the actual words used in a news report, which have concrete definitions, attempting to interpret and define the meaning of images is a little harder. For instance while certain conventions for interpretation exist, it is not always possible to decode certain gestures, facial expression and poses consistently because this is a very subjective exercise (Bednarek & Caple, 2012: 58). For example, an image of someone crying may indicate elation or despair; the interpretation depends on the context of the interpreter as well as the person performing the action. Bednarek and Caple note that two considerations need to be borne in mind when interpreting the news values espoused in images: "the contextualization of the image participants...(the denotative aspects), and the technical considerations...(connotative aspects)" (2012: 58).

This dissertation considers the images that used in the news reports being analysed, and discusses the role they play in helping or hampering the coverage to come across as credible. However as has already been discussed, because the field of visual rhetoric is highly specialised, the consideration given to the images is only with respect to how they relate to the text of the reporter's script. In order to adequately discuss them as rhetorical texts, a comprehensive study based on the theories of visual rhetoric would need to be undertaken.

4.7 Conclusion

The goal of this dissertation is to offer an in-depth discussion, rather than a broad overview, and as such, it only deals with fifteen of the news stories that were aired over the time period under consideration. This will hopefully serve as a starting point for future research on this topic. The sample that has been chosen for this dissertation does not purport to be representative of all the news stories covered; it merely provides a starting point. Further, a sample size of fifteen stories is appropriate for this dissertation, which will use textual analysis, because the methodology concerns itself with “moving from the concrete to the abstract, from the particular to the general” and as such is not very effective when there is too much material to analyse (Wood, 2000: 34).

This concludes the first half of the dissertation. The goal of this section has been to discuss the literature and theories that will inform the analysis on how SABC 3 employs the tools of rhetoric to persuade viewers that its version of the news is credible. This first part of the discussion has endeavoured to show how the discipline of rhetoric can be applied to television news in the South African context. It has discussed the conventions that are unique to this medium. It has also looked at how the modes of persuasion that were highlighted in Aristotle’s *Rhetoric* outwork themselves in television news. The second half of the dissertation will undertake the analysis of the selected news reports, and draw relevant conclusions.

5. ANALYSIS OF STORIES

5.1 Internal Developments Within the SABC

5.1.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

In the time period under consideration, there were a number of operational and political developments at the public broadcaster. These included the appointment of two renowned sports presenters, the resignation of several board members, and the subsequent appointment of others as replacements, and the extension of the English news bulletin from 30 minutes every day, to one hour every week night, and 30 minutes on weekends.

As a state-owned media entity, the SABC is subjected to constant scrutiny by the public and other media houses. In order for its newscasts to appear independent and objective, it is important that when matters arise at the organisation, and other media houses report of these, the SABC must also be seen to provide independent, objective and rigorous coverage. This is especially true when it comes to matters of leadership and management, in the form of the SABC board, and members of its executive management team. Internal issues within the public broadcaster often play themselves out publicly, and when the SABC remains silent or merely provides surface coverage of these, it comes across as lacking credibility. This makes its news coverage of internal SABC matters very important in how its credibility is perceived.

The SABC's news coverage of stories around internal developments within the public broadcaster is a form of "self-epideictic" rhetoric. Philippe-Joseph Salazar describes this as a form of rhetoric where "people are led...to perform these values, to give them rhetorical substance, to "own the process"" (2002: 93). In this respect, by covering stories about itself in a manner that attempts to demonstrate the journalistic values of transparency, objectivity and accuracy, the SABC can be seen as endeavouring to "demonstrate [and] show off [these] values" (Salazar, 2002: 93). Therefore, by providing regular news updates about itself, it uses "[t]his epideictic coil [to ensure] a sense of legitimacy for those who control this medium" (Salazar, 2002: 93). Whether, upon further analysis, this coverage can really be deemed to be transparent, objective and accurate, is another matter, which will be discussed

further on in the dissertation. However, the manner in which it employs the self-epideictic genre of rhetoric must be noted here, in this section that examines the background and reasons behind the SABC's coverage of stories based on its internal developments.

5.1.2 SABC coverage of this story

The exigence that gave rise to news reports on internal developments within the SABC was the fact that as a public broadcaster, the SABC needs to be seen as being transparent. As such, when there are stories on developments within the public broadcaster, it has to be proactive and air news reports that address these, otherwise it might be seen as trying to cover matters up. The reports filed in the time period under consideration were very diverse in the topics that they covered, with the only similarity being that they were based on developments within the SABC. There were reports about on-air changes, such as a longer English news bulletin, as well as the appointment of two new sports presenters. There were also reports about discord within the SABC board that saw members resigning and new ones being appointed.

Because of the variety of the topics of the reports filed, the rhetorical genres used for reporting on these were also varied, however, overarching all of these was the "self-epideictic" rhetoric discussed above. Where the stories were about the SABC board, the genres employed were judicial and deliberative, as the reports sought to allude to the fact that something was amiss, and as a result someone had to be blamed. The reporter falls short of conducting the necessary investigation that would enable her to file the types of reports that identify the exact party which was involved in the turmoil, and satisfy the requirements of the judicial genre. Instead, she merely referenced the discord, and did not go further and probe how and why it arose, which would be required in a judicial text.

The profiling of the nominees to sit on the SABC board employed the deliberative genre of rhetoric. It provided an opportunity for viewers to scrutinise the incoming candidates, and to ascertain whether or not they would be suitable. This, however, does not imply that viewers actually had a say at this stage of the process, because it was eventually parliament that

decided on the people who got appointed onto the board. The news report was simply a pseudo form of deliberation, although it purported to be a platform for viewers to be informed as to who the incoming board members were.

In terms of the reports on pending changes, the reports were filed in such a way as to mark these changes as significant occasions for the public broadcaster. This then means that the epideictic genre was employed. The appointment of the two new sports presenters was portrayed as quite a ‘catch’ for the public broadcaster, as the two were described as “renowned personalities”. Further, the explanation of the extension of the bulletin from 30 minutes to an hour was described as “listening to the suggestions of people”, and hence the SABC portrayed itself as a broadcaster that is in touch with what viewers want, and marked this occasion by celebrating the launch of its hour long newscast on April 1, 2013.

In light of this, the news reports on the SABC were pegged on the news values of timeliness - featuring information about the latest developments, whether it was the hiring of new presenters, or reports about developments within the SABC board; prominence - because the stories involving board members featured a number of well-known people; consonance - because the reports fit into the stereotypical view of the SABC as an organisation that is in constant flux with an unusually high turnover of board members, CEOs, COOs and senior managers (Kadali, 2013); impact - because developments at the public broadcaster have a profound impact on its millions of viewers and listeners across the continent; and novelty - because some of the news reports were about changes in broadcast time and presenters.

The different news reports employed various communicative frames. The first story filed in the time period under consideration was on March 8, 2013, and was an announcement about the employment of two prominent sports presenters, Thomas Mlambo and Tsepho Mabona. This employed the classical reporting frame, providing a brief update. The next five reports filed were about developments within the SABC board. These were covered using a range of communicative frames including the contention frame, where a number of voices were featured; classical reporting, where updates were provided on the latest developments; and the dominant frame where the views of the minister of communications clearly dominate coverage.

The final set of reports on the SABC, which were filed in the time period under consideration, on March 30, 2013 and April 1, 2013, were about the change in time and duration of the flagship news bulletin from the 1st of April. Both of these reports did not follow the traditional format of a news report and would be better classified as interviews. The first one was on March 30, 2013, and was a fairly brief pre-recorded interview with the SABC's Acting Chief Operations Officer, Hlaudi Motsoeneng. The second interview was on April 1, 2013, and it was a much longer interview with the Chief Executive Officer, Lulama Mokhobo, and was conducted live in studio, as SABC 3 aired its first hour-long broadcast of the flagship English news bulletin. Both these reports used the dominant communicative frame of reporting as the reports were centred solely on the views of the COO and CEO respectively, and there were no other voices to either confirm or challenge these.

Visually, most of the shots used were of prominent people, such as board members and executives, and the Minister of Communications, Dina Pule. They were filmed while participating in meetings either in parliament or other such forums. There was a noteworthy shot and interview included in one of the news reports where the SABC's CEO, Lulama Mokhobo, addressed viewers directly, and instead of following the convention of an interviewee looking slightly at an angle, away from the camera, she spoke directly into it, in the same manner that an announcer would.

The primary rhetorical proof that was used in these reports was *logos* because the reports were an endeavour to explain logically what the latest developments at the public broadcaster were. In terms of these, interviews were conducted with both the SABC CEO, as well as the acting COO, to contextualise the developments and explain how they had arisen. Whether the explanations were credible is another issue, however, the way in which they were reported on demonstrated an endeavour by the SABC to portray them as the logical outcome of well thought out processes.

5.1.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

Because it is under constant scrutiny from other media houses and the public, the SABC needs to be seen as capable of fair reportage on issues that affect it. By filing reports on developments within the organisation, the public broadcaster succeeds in coming across as

being willing to introspect. Whether that introspection is perceived as being as rigorous as it should be is another matter, however, by reporting on both positive and negative stories about itself, the public broadcaster at least acknowledges the fact that what unfolds internally is newsworthy. This is an important step in coming across as a credible news broadcaster.

The news report on the SABC securing the services of “two of the country’s most experienced sports presenters” was a story that was included with the aim of portraying the broadcaster in a positive light. Even before considering how the news report was written and packaged, the inclusion of this story must be noted as one of the ways that the SABC tried to come across as being credible. It showcased the fact that the SABC is able to attract ‘leading’ presenters and is thus a credible broadcaster. Rhetorically, by highlighting the pair’s credentials and also referring to the fact that “Mlambo joins from rival *Supersport*”, and that this was Mabona’s “second opportunity at the public broadcaster”, the message that came through was that leading media personalities desired to work for the SABC, and it must therefore be a leading and credible broadcaster. The news report itself was not particularly noteworthy. Employing the classical reporting frame, it merely gave an update that these two presenters were going to be employed by the SABC, even though the descriptions used were slightly embellished to make the SABC come across as a desirable employer. Thus, for this report, the major factor that influenced whether the SABC came across as being credible or not was the fact that this particular story was included. Presenters and journalists are employed and dismissed by media houses regularly, and this rarely makes it into the prime time news bulletin. But in this instance, it was included to portray the SABC as a broadcaster that attracts reputable presenters, and is thus a credible source of news.

Its coverage of the developments within the board relied heavily on what politicians had to say, and while it endeavoured to give numerous political parties an opportunity to be heard, it was a pity that the voices of media experts and the public did not feature in the discussions around issues pertaining to the board. By focusing solely on what the president, the minister and parliamentarians had to say, the broadcaster positioned these developments as political, and failed to facilitate the public engagement that should have arisen, given that the SABC is a *public* broadcaster. This bias perpetuated the view that the SABC is more of a political tool than it is a public entity. Granted, the developments were of a political nature, since it was parliament and the minister of communications that had a say on how the board was

constituted, however, the developments should have included analytical voices, and perhaps even *vox pops* from the public to move the story from being one with a predominantly political slant.

Further, instead of merely reporting on who was in and out of the SABC board, the reports should have also featured an educational aspect that provided the public with an overview of the reasons behind the dissolution of the board. The SABC board seems to be an entity plagued by problems, and even though the public does not need to know all the details around these, it does need to be given a sense of whether these are political or matters of principle. South Africans also needed to be educated on how members of the board are elected, and on what grounds the board can be dissolved. These aspects did not come through in the coverage, and it appeared to be merely a case of politicians voicing their views, an endeavour that did not leave the public more informed, and thus did not bode well in terms of the broadcaster's credibility.

The reporter's script on the developments within the SABC board further fuelled the confusion as to what was going on at the broadcaster because instead of contextualising things, she merely reported on who had resigned, was reinstated and appointed. These reports show no evidence of having probed reasons for the resignations, reinstatements and appointments, and they simply provide a sequence of events. This simplistic reporting, for such a complex situation, suggests that the reporter either did not bother to investigate further, which points to incompetence, or could not investigate further, which suggests editorial interference. Either way, the failure to contextualise why things were happening the way that they were at the SABC brought the credibility of the reports filed in this regard under question.

The report filed on March 18, 2013, on the resignation of six board members, had a feature that is peculiar to a pre-packaged television news report. The direct address by CEO, Lulama Mokhobo, where she spoke facing the camera directly, as is normally done by announcers, rhetorically conveyed a sense of her making an urgent or unusual announcement. The anchor framed this as the CEO "giving assurances that its business as usual". The peculiarity here is that this type of announcement, in this format, is usually reserved for a live broadcast or a separate package. It is not normal for it to be included as part of a broader news report where interviews with various other news actors are also included. In terms of television,

Mokhobo's direct address rhetorically conferred greater importance to her message, than to the messages coming from the other news actors featured as part of that particular news report. This was probably used to emphasise what she had to say, namely that in spite of the turmoil that was featured in the report, the message of "business as usual" was of utmost importance for viewers. It is unlikely that any other person, other than another senior SABC executive, would be allowed to deliver a message in this manner in a story like this. This then raises the question of how the SABC covers the negative aspects of stories around internal developments, and whether these are merely included so that it is perceived as being balanced in its reporting, when all the while the real focus is on interviews and coverage that portrays the broadcaster in a positive light.

This is also evident in the reports filed on March 30, 2013 and April 1, 2013, about changes to the format of the SABC 3 flagship English news bulletin. These reports featured the COO and CEO respectively, and in both instances they were given an unusually long time to talk about the pending changes, and there was no additional interview to challenge or even support their statements. The interview with CEO Lulama Mokhobo was especially noteworthy because even though it was a live interview, with the news anchor asking her questions, it came across as scripted, in order to ensure that the changes were reported on in a positive light. The anchor asked a number of predictable questions such as what gave rise to the change, what difference the changes were expected to make, and the views of the audience. Mokhobo gave lengthy responses to these, and instead of probing some of the points further, the anchor simply moved on to the next question, hence an impression was created that the questions were strictly scripted. In conducting the interview in this way, the intention appears to have been to pretend to be conducting a probing interview with a senior SABC manager about these developments, when it was in fact more of a public relations exercise, where the CEO used the platform to tell the public just how wonderful these developments were going to be. This then speaks to the question raised above: was the SABC's coverage of this story a genuine attempt to help viewers understand what was going on at the public broadcaster, or was it an opportunity to spin these developments in a positive light? The manner in which the interview was conducted came across as the latter, thus bringing the credibility of SABC's reporting on this story into question.

5.2 Upgrades to President Jacob Zuma’s Home in Nkandla

5.2.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

The issue of upgrades, worth close to 250-million rands, to President Jacob Zuma’s private residence in Nkandla, was very topical in 2013. After having come to light in 2009 (de Wet, 2014), it appears to have taken officials a peculiarly long time to identify why the upgrades cost as much as they did, and who was responsible for authorising them. At the time of writing this dissertation, the South African parliament was yet to put together an ad-hoc committee to investigate the matter.

The developments in this story during the time period under consideration were minimal, and only two reports were filed by the SABC. They revolved around the Minister of Public Works, Thulas Nxesi, agreeing to table a report on this issue in parliament. The first news report was about the minister making the announcement that the report would be tabled, and the second news report was about the manner in which this would be done, given that the upgrades were supposedly as a result of security concerns which would have to be kept confidential.

5.2.2 SABC coverage of this story

Even though there were only two reports aired on the SABC 3 English news bulletin about Nkandla, in the time period under consideration, coverage of this particular story is worth considering in this dissertation because of the political ‘hot potato’ that the Nkandla upgrades have been, not only for the government, but also for the SABC. When reports on the spending on upgrades to the president’s Nkandla home first surfaced in various media in 2012, the SABC caused a stir when its managers sent out an instruction to editors forbidding them from using a number of colloquial terms that had come to be associated with the story. These included “Zumaville”, “Nkandlagate”, “compound” and “homestead” when referring to the president’s home (SAPA, 2012). Reporters were told that they had to either say “the president’s or Mr Zuma’s Nkandla residence” (SAPA, 2012). The SABC’s head of news, Jimmy Matthews, was quoted by the newspaper, *The Star*, describing the word ‘compound’ as originating “from our racial past...to accommodation for migrant workers at the mine”

(SAPA, 2012). Media commentators described these moves by SABC managers as censorship, creating doubt on whether the public broadcaster would report on this story in a way that was independent and objective, and ultimately credible.

One of the ways that the SABC attempted to make its reporting on the developments around Nkandla appear independent and objective was by trying to steer clear of reporting in a manner that relied too heavily on commentary or interpretation. The public broadcaster chose to cover the story through the classical reporting frame, simply reporting on the latest developments, and obtaining sound bites from parties that held press briefings in this regard. In contrast to this, coverage from most of the other media houses featured at least one investigative report, something the SABC did not do. The public broadcaster also employed the contention frame in its reporting on the day it filed a story on the views of various political parties about some of the developments on Nkandla. This report did not feature any interpretation from the journalist, and the script took the form of a 'he said, she said' piece, completely devoid of context.

The exigence that gave rise to the reporting on this story was the exorbitant amount of money that was spent upgrading the president's Nkandla home, and reports were that this amount of money had been spent wrongfully. The prevailing public sentiment was that someone should be held accountable and pay for the wasteful expenditure. As such, reports around the matter were focused on the processes of holding someone to account.

In terms of the visuals, all of the footage used in the news reports on Nkandla were from inside meeting rooms, featuring parliamentarians and other officials. Unlike other media, which often included pictures of the actual home in Nkandla, SABC's reports in the time period under consideration featured absolutely no visuals of the Nkandla home, even though these were easily obtainable. In terms of news values, coverage of this story was pegged on almost every single news value, conferring a great deal of importance to the reports. Expectedly, the reports filed were always headline items. The reports were pegged on negativity - because of the inexplicably exorbitant amount of tax payers' money that went into upgrading Zuma's home; timeliness - because the news reports would usually follow an announcement or development around this story; prominence - because it involved the president and a number of other senior government officials; consonance - because the story fit the prevailing stereotype of a corrupt government; impact and superlativeness - because of

the amount spent on the upgrades; novelty - because this was the first time that a sitting South African president had been implicated in a scandal of this magnitude, as well as the contradictory statements that were being issued by different government departments; and personalisation - because it was centred largely around President Zuma.

The prevailing genre of rhetoric employed in the coverage of this story was judicial, as the reports focused on the processes underway to determine who was to blame. The reporting did not seek to arrive at answers; it merely focused on the parliamentary processes that sought to bring someone to account. Insofar as the reports referred to how the money had been spent, and what past pronouncements had been made on the matter, as well as what consequences awaited those found to have been involved in the matter, the coverage was deliberative. But because most of the coverage in the time period under consideration was focused on the processes to hold someone to account, the judicial genre of rhetoric was used.

The rhetorical proof employed in most of these news reports was the *logos* proof, as the reporter sought to explain the parliamentary processes that were probing the amount of money spent on the Nkandla upgrades. The reports did not delve too deeply into how such a large sum of money could have been spent without any proper supervision; they simply reported on the explanations given by the government officials and did not investigate whether the information given by government officials was indeed accurate.

5.2.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

There are news stories where journalists should steer clear of interpreting the events, and instead allow the news actors to explain the details through sound bites. These stories are usually those that are focused on reporting on people's sentiments around an issue, or where specific case studies are being profiled. There are other stories where the journalist needs to interpret what is going on in order for viewers to understand. These are the types of stories where a great deal of information needs to be condensed into a one-and-a-half minute long news report, as happens in court cases, parliamentary sittings, and press conferences. The events that were covered around Nkandla in the time period under consideration fell into the latter category, and one expected the SABC's news reports to provide a little more context and interpretation than they did. If one considers the report filed on March 13, 2013, where

Public Works Minister, Thulas Nxesi, announced that he would table a report in parliament about the upgrades, the introduction that was three sentences long, followed by a brief sound bite, did not suffice for a story of this nature. The least the news report could have done was to expound on why the tabling of the report by the minister was significant, because if it was not, they surely would not have covered it in the prime news bulletin as a headline story. The simple introduction that stated that the minister was going to table the report, and the use of a sound bite from the Speaker of Parliament, Max Sisulu, addressing the sitting, left so much unanswered that it would have probably been better to have left the story out of the bulletin entirely.

The same can be said about the second news report filed on this story on March 14, 2013, about opposition parties being against a suggestion to have the report tabled in-camera. The journalist merely reported on who said what, without explaining why this was significant. Citizens rely on reporters to explain and summarise the complex discussions that take place in parliament; it really did not suffice for the reporter to merely link sound bites without elaborating on the context. She needed to give the crux of what every significant speaker had said, and explained why this was relevant. In its coverage of this story, therefore, the SABC did not come across as convincing or credible, because its reporting was not adequate for this type of story.

This failure by the SABC to go beyond the reports of what happened in parliament raised questions about how willing the public broadcaster was to question the version of events it was being told by political actors. As has been stated, this was a highly political matter, and with the prevailing sentiment that the SABC answers to the governing African National Congress, the broadcaster's coverage of this story played into that view. Thus as long as the public broadcaster is not seen to approach its coverage of this story in an independent and probing manner, it will be deemed to be simply obeying "his master's voice" (Orgeret, 2008).

It is also noteworthy that, throughout its coverage of Nkandla over the time period under consideration, there were absolutely no visuals of the president's home. Perhaps the SABC was abiding by a declaration by the Minister of Public Works that the president's home is a national key point (Underhill, 2014). This absence was notable and it diminished the broadcaster's credibility in the coverage of this particular story, because it once again came across as not wanting to offend the government.

5.3 The Death of Ficksburg Protestor, Andries Tatane

5.3.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

Andries Tatane was a 33 year old South African man who took part in a service delivery protest in Ficksburg on April 13, 2011. During the protest he was involved in an altercation with police, and he was beaten and kicked, and rubber bullets were fired at him after he tried to stop police from firing a water canon at the crowd of several thousand protestors. Tatane is said to have died 20 minutes after this assault. An official autopsy report found the cause of death to be a gunshot wound to the chest (du Plessis, 2013; SAPA-AFP). The seven policemen who were charged with the crime were later acquitted because the state could not prove sufficiently that they had been the ones who caused his death.

The incident was captured on video footage by an SABC television news crew. The public broadcaster screened it as part of its bulletin that evening, and subsequently drew criticism from the governing African National Congress's Spokesperson, Jackson Mthembu, who expressed concern that "the public broadcaster showed such shocking and disturbing images on its prime time news slot with disregard to young viewers and other sensitive people who obviously would have been disturbed to various degrees by such images" (Rawoot & Underhill, 2011). According to SABC Chief Executive, Robin Nicholson, "[t]he footage was carried with a warning and it report[ed] what happened without prejudice" (Rawoot & Underhill, 2011).

In the time period considered by this dissertation, the coverage focused mainly on the trial of the seven policemen charged with Tatane's murder. A verdict to acquit them of all charges was reached on March 28, 2013. Thereafter, the SABC ran a few stories on how the respective parties intended to proceed, following the judgment. The National Prosecuting Authority decided not to appeal the outcome, and instead considered pressing charges against some of its witnesses whom it accused of perjury. Meanwhile, Tatane's family considered filing a civil claim against the police minister.

5.3.2 SABC coverage of this story

By virtue of involvement in breaking the story, and capturing the incriminating footage on video, the SABC did not merely cover this story from the perspective of an observer. The public broadcaster's coverage became a news story in itself, with some applauding it for airing the footage, while others thought it was inappropriate for the prime time news bulletin. This unique position of being 'the reporter' and 'the reported on' made the SABC's coverage of this particular story very interesting to observe.

What is glaringly obvious is that from the onset, the public broadcaster tried to downplay its role of having captured this incriminating footage. In the news report aired on March 8, 2013, the SABC did not even mention that its cameraperson was the one who had captured the footage of Tatane being beaten, kicked and shot at by police, and subsequently dying – all while the camera was rolling. The SABC was the only broadcaster that had this footage, and had it been another broadcaster, one is almost certain that news agency would have chosen to include these 'facts' which position it at the forefront of breaking news (Bednarek & Caple, 2012: 74 – 75).

The SABC's coverage of this story mainly employed the classic reporting frame, with a great deal of focus placed on the latest developments in the court case (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 347). When the story first broke, the news values that caused it to make headlines were: the impact - the fact that a man had died after having been shot at by police at close-range during a service delivery protest; novelty - the fact that there had not been any deaths during these types of protests since the apartheid era; prominence - the fact that it was law enforcement officials who had had a hand in the death of an unarmed protester; and negativity - the fact that a man died in this way. The visuals for this story were also a factor in it being deemed newsworthy because the entire ordeal was captured on video by the SABC. Over time, the story remained in the news as the court case progressed, and the news values that prompted its continued coverage were: timeliness - reports on the days when the court was hearing the matter; and prominence - by this time Andries Tatane had become a well-known figure.

Visually, the coverage consisted of footage shot from inside court, including close-up shots of Tatane's family, file footage of the April 2011 protest, as well file footage of the altercation between Tatane and the police. It is worth noting that the file footage of the altercation between Tatane was an edited version of what the SABC aired when the story first broke, notably omitting some of the scenes where police beat Tatane up, as well as the scene where he collapsed and eventually died.

Based on the news values above, the exigence that initially gave rise to the coverage of Andries Tatane's death was the fact that police had allegedly shot and killed an unarmed man during a service delivery protest, at a time when citizens were decrying what appeared to be the militarisation of the police service. However in the time period under consideration, the focus moved from the actual incident and the exigence to cover the story was based on observing whether or not justice would be served in this case. This contemplation on the execution of justice was shown in two ways. Firstly it came through in the manner in which the reporter provided regular updates on how the trial was proceeding – the case received 'blow-by-blow' coverage until the verdict was delivered on March 28, 2013. By doing this, the reporter put the workings of the justice system on display, affording viewers who could not be in the courtroom an opportunity to see how the case had unfolded. The second way in which we see that the reporting was geared at contemplating whether justice was served, in the typical judicial genre of rhetoric, is the pronouncement that the ruling was a 'surprise'. The term surprise is not necessarily negative or positive, but the manner in which it was used in this instance suggested that a different outcome had been expected, and as such, justice was not seen to have been served because the final verdict was described as a 'surprise'. The reporter, therefore, inferred that the justice system had failed Andries Tatane and his family, because the case did not reach the expected conclusion. Even after the ruling, the story continued to be covered using the judicial genre of rhetoric, with the journalist noting that "calls are mounting for the national prosecuting authority to appeal the Andries Tatane murder ruling" which suggested that, in her view, the judgement fell severely short of what people had expected, and should thus be appealed against.

In terms of the rhetorical proofs, this story appears to have drawn largely on the *logos* proof because, central to the coverage, was an attempt to report on the arguments given by the state and the defence during the court case. Although the reporting did not delve too deeply into

these, insights from these two sides formed the basis for the story. The approach used by the reporter was one that almost said to the viewers ‘here are the arguments that were made by the respective parties, you decide which of these to believe’.

The report filed on March 28, 2013, which referred to the shock with which the verdict was received, drew on the *pathos* proof, as it came across as attempting to evoke emotion in the viewers. Firstly, the interviewees featured in this report were all people who would have liked for the verdict to have found against the policemen. The interview with Tatane’s uncle, David Nthodi, expressed the family’s disappointment, while the interview with Phaladi Shuping, expressed a sense of bewilderment by the state which found it “difficult...to say now what kind of action will be taken”. There was no voice from the parties in whose favour the judgement had gone in order to ‘balance’ the news report. These interviews would have played on the sympathies of those watching, who upon viewing this insert, would have also sympathised with the voices that were included. The *pathos* element here is not necessarily seen in the speakers display of emotions, but rather in the words they used to express their disappointment. The journalist also scripted the voice-over to play on emotions. For instance she said “The ruling surprised many in that courtroom”. This gave the impression that “many in that courtroom” had looked forward to a different outcome, but there was no evidence that the reporter actually ascertained this by asking “the many” what their impressions of the case were. This is significant to note because to have made such a claim, especially in a television news report, required the reporter to provide evidence, either in the form of visuals or *vox pops* that there were indeed many people who were surprised by the ruling. If one considers the images used, some of these are also seen to have drawn on the *pathos* proof. The inclusion of the old footage from the day of the protest when Tatane died is clearly intended to take viewers back to that day and remind them of the tragedy that unfolded. This too would play on their emotions.

Even though Tatane was accused of violence, by the time the matter went to court the coverage employed took on a tone that was sympathetic to him, and in so doing portrayed him as a victim. This depiction drew on the *ethos* proof, as it portrayed his character as that of a helpless individual who was targeted by the police, thus evoking pity from viewers. This can be seen in the choice of words in the various reports characterising him as someone who was innocent and who did not deserve what happened. In a report filed on April 2, 2013, for example, the reporter stated: “Fiksburg protestor, Andries Tatane, is caught in a scuffle with

police. Moments later he is severely assaulted and shot. He succumbed to his injuries”. This account could have obviously been written differently, placing the police at the centre, perhaps saying Andries Tatane attacked police who then responded to him with force in an attempt to keep things under control. Throughout the reporting the words used communicated a rhetoric of police brutality and an innocent protestor who was caught in the cross fire.

5.3.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

If one considers the SABC’s coverage of this story on March 28, 2013, when the court handed down a judgment to acquit the police, one sees that the SABC employed evaluative, rather than objective, language in its reporting. Bednarek and Caple argue that “evaluative language includes linguistic expressions that realise opinion, for example, assessments of positivity or negativity, importance or unimportance, expectedness or unexpectedness” (2012: 46). The headline “Surprise Court Ruling”, shows evaluative language choice by the journalist because in her opinion, a different outcome was expected to the one delivered by the court. This expectations appears to have been based on the journalist’s personal assessment, because other than the her narration, the story only featured interviews with a member of Tatane’s family and the National Prosecuting Authority’s spokesperson, both of whom would have obviously hoped for a different outcome. It failed to show any indication that this expectation was based on wide-spread public perception.

On April 2, 2013, when the SABC next covered the story, the news anchor introduced it by saying: “Calls are mounting for the National Prosecuting Authority to appeal the Andries Tatane murder ruling”. When one examines that day’s coverage, the so-called ‘mounting calls’ were only attributable to one source – William Booth, who is lawyer. Again, based on this, one concludes that the journalist employed evaluative language to pass off her expectations as actual developments in the story. This is important to note because when the story first broke, the SABC afforded ordinary Ficksburg residents, and other South African citizens, the opportunity to voice their opinions of the incident. The news reports included *vox pops* reflecting the sentiments on the ground. However, over the time period under consideration, namely between March 8, 2013 and April 7, 2013, these ‘ordinary voices’

were no longer included, but the reporting still employed language that suggested that the journalist's deductions arose out of having spoken to people on the ground.

Further, the reliance on file footage of the residents, as opposed to fresh visuals, which could have easily been obtained by simply revisiting the Ficksburg community, brings into question whether the public broadcaster bothered to solicit the views of the community, particularly as the court case drew to a close. Perhaps the focus on what emerged in court became the priority, and rightly so. However, since this was a story that originated from a service delivery protest by the community, it would have been advantageous, for the purposes of establishing itself as a credible source of news, for the public broadcaster to maintain a strong community voice throughout. This oversight diminished its credibility.

It is also notable that as the court case progressed, the issues over which the community had initially been protesting were side-lined, and any reference to them was simply summed up as 'service delivery issues'. Again, as a public broadcaster, the SABC would have done well to keep the community concerns at the fore, instead of simply reporting on what happened in court. Community issues would have been prioritised had there been more *vox pops*, and this would have bolstered the public's perception that the broadcaster genuinely places the public in a central position.

5.4 The Death of Thirteen South African Soldiers in the Central African Republic

5.4.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

In February 2007, South Africa and the Central African Republic (CAR) signed a memorandum where South Africa undertook to assist the CAR army "to upgrade its military capabilities" and to "provide VIP protection to President Francois Bozize, and Operation Vimbesele (DEPARTMENT OF INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS AND COOPERATION, 2011). On March 24, 2013, thirteen South African soldiers were shot and killed in the CAR after rebels attacked the presidential palace in a coup d'état that saw Bozize fleeing to the Democratic Republic of Congo. In the wake of the deaths, questions were raised in the South African media as to what mission the South African soldiers were on in the CAR, and how

the attack unfolded. Coverage of the story in the period under consideration culminated in the funerals of the slain South African soldiers.

5.4.2 SABC coverage of this story

The exigence that gave rise to the coverage of this story was the fact that 13 South African soldiers had been killed in a foreign country under circumstances which were initially unclear. As the public broadcaster, the SABC had an obligation to inform viewers about what had transpired and why. It also had an obligation to broaden its coverage and include insights about what needed to be done in order to prevent such an occurrence in the future.

Stories on developments in the Central African Republic received priority coverage, often being the lead story of the evening, and featuring prominently in follow-up interviews. The coverage was pegged on the news values of negativity – soldiers had been shot and killed; timeliness – particularly immediately after the shooting of the soldiers, and also closer to their funerals; prominence – while the individual soldiers might not have been known, but stories featuring the army usually carry a heightened status; impact – the implication of the events on South Africa’s diplomatic relations across the African continent and particularly with the CAR; and personalisation – a number of stories featured in-depth profiles of who the soldiers were, and included the voices of their loved ones.

Of the different communicative frames discussed by Cottle and Rai (2008) the coverage of the developments in the CAR by SABC 3 news tended towards an investigative frame, although it fell short of fulfilling the purpose of an investigative piece which is to provide answers to the questions raised by the news report. The coverage highlighted various unknown factors around the incident, but only relied on official responses from the government and army officials. Naturally, these parties were not forthcoming, and the questions remained largely unanswered. The coverage of the funerals of the soldiers relied on the contention frame, where the voices of army officials and family members dominated.

In terms of visuals, the SABC relied either on file footage or footage obtained from the news wires. The same footage was used over and over again in its coverage, sometimes even repeated in the same news report. The shots used seem to have been those of random

soldiers, and often did not have any relevance to what the journalist was reporting on, other than to indicate that she was making reference to developments in the CAR. One could not really tell which visuals were of South African soldiers and which ones were of the CAR rebels because there was no clear distinction. With regard to the funeral and memorial services held in South Africa, there was greater detail in the coverage, with SABC journalists being deployed to each of the services that took place for the thirteen slain men. The coverage featured interviews with emotional family members, and also relied on addresses by army officials.

The genre of rhetoric used to report on this story was judicial, as coverage sought to understand who was to blame, even though this question was not conclusively answered in the reports. There were also aspects of the coverage that were reported on through the epideictic genre, particularly in the coverage of the events that happened in South Africa in the aftermath of the soldiers' deaths. These included memorial services and funerals, where those giving addresses at these occasions used these as an opportunity to praise the values espoused by the fallen soldiers, such as their courage and willingness to die while in service for their country. During these occasions, speakers were at pains to highlight their courage, with more than one noting how despite there being "200 against plus-minus 3000 rebel forces", the South African troops defeated the rebels.

The blame element in the reporting, as it is expressed through the judicial genre of rhetoric, came through in two instances. Firstly, when commentators were quoted as saying that there was no legitimate reason for the soldiers to have been in the CAR in the first place, and secondly when family members were quoted as saying that the government gave insufficient information about the situation. In these instances, even though there were only one or two interviewees who expressed these sentiments, the reporter framed the story as though there were "mounting" calls. In a report filed on March 25, 2013, for instance, the anchor introduced the report, which was the lead story for that evening's bulletin as follows: "Calls are mounting for the remaining South African soldiers in the Central African Republic to be brought home. But President Jacob Zuma says they will remain in that country." The exigence in this particular report was that the government refused to listen 'to reason' and insisted on keeping the soldiers in the CAR, despite "mounting calls" from logical bodies and entities to the contrary. This then conferred blame on the state for being unreasonable in not only erroneously deploying the soldiers to the CAR, but in keeping them there for no

apparent reason. In this report the anchor went on to highlight the ‘illogical’ nature of the decision by stating: “SANDF soldiers to remain in the rebel held country”. They subtly raised the question of blame by suggesting that if the South African government was aware that the country was indeed ‘rebel held’, why did it keep its soldiers there despite there not appearing to be any significant links between South Africa and the CAR?

Further on in the coverage, as reports started to focus on the funerals of the slain soldiers, the reporting employed the epideictic genre, and instead of blaming the government, the reports were angled so as to praise the bravery of the soldiers. They were described as “brave”, “perished in a raging battle with armed insurgents”, “South African heroes”, “fallen soldiers”, and “heroes, and not cowards in the service of their country” Each of the soldiers was given an official funeral.

The proof that this type of story should have drawn on was *logos*, as the reporter should have used logical reasoning to explain what had happened and why, and to also argue why there were suggestions that the South African government had failed. By employing the *logos* proof, the reporter would have been compelled to come up with some evidence that would support a particular claim, as opposed to merely asking questions which yielded absolutely no answers, which was the approach she opted for. In order to effectively use the *logos* proof, the reporter needed to have used investigative techniques to uncover answers to the questions posed in the various reports. From the audience’s perspective the inability to get answers would have been obvious, making the reports unconvincing.

Where the reports succeeded was in employing the *pathos* proof by ensuring that the coverage of the deaths and funerals was as emotional as it could be. This included emotional interviews with family members, heartfelt speeches from fellow South African National Defence Force officials, as well as the pomp and ceremony that accompanies occasions of this nature. The ability to draw on the emotions of those most affected by the deaths made the events more meaningful for viewers. South Africans could then see the thirteen dead men as more than mere casualties of war, but as sons, fathers and brothers of people just like them. This then added to the approach of ‘blaming’ the government for not being able to provide adequate answers for why the deaths had occurred in the first place. It is unfortunate that the reporter did not demonstrate a keenness to follow this up.

5.4.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

The SABC's coverage was severely limited by not deploying a journalist to the Central African Republic to cover the developments on-location for the broadcaster. A story of this magnitude warranted this, and perhaps many of the questions that were raised in the news reports would have been better answered had the public broadcaster had a crew on the ground to conduct the investigations. Granted, the country was a war zone at the time, but this has never before stopped broadcasters from deploying their reporters to a scene. In listening to the reports filed by a journalist clearly based in South Africa, one is left with more questions than answers, something that should be seen as a failure on the part of the public broadcaster because a credible news report is supposed to answer questions, not merely raise them.

The funerals and memorial services made for great visuals – emotion, as well as numerous national symbols – however one does wonder why so much time and resources were devoted to covering these. On April 6, 2013, when twelve of the thirteen soldiers were buried, there were news reports filed from each of the funerals. Was such extensive coverage of these burials really necessary, bearing in mind that there were more pressing issues around this story, and many questions that required thorough investigative work were still unanswered? This 'detailed' coverage may have been an attempt by the broadcaster to compensate for not having filed enough reports that explored the actual issues that led to the deaths in the first place. There was an attempt to show robust debate on the matter in parliament, but again, this came across as merely scratching the surface since the broadcaster relied primarily on sound bites, which were a few seconds long, from the different political parties. Even without necessarily getting answers from officials, the journalist could have filed reports on topics such as the relationship between South Africa and the CAR prior to the shooting, the history of the conflict in the Central African Republic, and the 'consequences' as a result of the deaths. The angles of the news reports appear to have been largely determined by the South African government's agenda, in terms of responding to the developments. This approach did not bode well for the public broadcaster's credibility.

The repeated use of images featuring uniformed and armed men, conferred importance to the story. According to Bednarek and Caple (2012: 59), "[u]niforms and official regalia work or carried by image participants...indicate status and thus construe prominence". This was

evident in the visuals obtained from the Central African Republic, as well as those obtained in South Africa during the various funerals and memorial services. Given the fact that reports filed by the SABC on the conflict in CAR did not contain information that could be deemed as breaking or headline-making, it was perhaps these visuals, together with the subject of the story, namely the killing of South African soldiers in a foreign country that did the coverage of this major story justice.

In terms of the actual words and language used to report on this story, there was a notable reliance on evaluative words that portrayed the journalist's impressions as facts. An example of this was the introduction to the story aired on March 25, 2013, which stated that "Calls are mounting for the remaining South African soldiers in the Central African Republic to be brought home". These 'mounting calls' were only reflected in a single interview with a member of the South African National Defence Union, SANDU, which did not even talk explicitly about the soldiers returning home, but rather that the South African government had been warned in advance that something of this nature could occur. Another instance of this evaluative language was observed in the news report filed on March 27, 2013, where the journalist referred to "many questions remain unanswered". On closer reading of the story, the "many questions" once again arose from a single source, the SANDU, and they were primarily focused on what the troops were doing in the CAR. This is not to say there were not many questions that arose out of this incident – there may well have been - but in its reporting, both in terms of visuals and the sound bites used, the SABC did not reflect this adequately so that viewers could confidently agree with the journalist's assessment that there were indeed "many questions".

The SABC's coverage of this story relied too heavily on official government sources for information, as opposed to finding other sources to verify or discount this. What would have been even more fitting for the continent's biggest broadcaster would have been for the SABC to come up with new angles, informed largely by the people most affected by the developments in the CAR. Granted, the voice of government needed to be quite prominent in a story like this because it is easy for misinformation to circulate, placing the lives of the soldiers that remained in the CAR in jeopardy. But the voice of government should have been corroborated by other sources, preferably based in the CAR. The fact that the SABC did not appear to have deployed a correspondent to that country, even though the story

developed over several days, further dented its ability to persuade viewers that its coverage of this story was credible. The heavy reliance on file footage, much of which had absolutely no relevance to what the journalist had scripted, also added to this failure to be persuasive.

5.5 The Detention of Cyril Karabus in the United Arab Emirates

5.5.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

Professor Cyril Karabus is a paediatric oncologist from South Africa who was arrested while in transit in Abu Dhabi, in August 2012, on charges of manslaughter, related to the death of a three year old patient that he had treated over a decade ago in that country. The story broke in 2012 when Karabus was arrested. It resurfaced when the South African Department of International Relations and Cooperation began calling for Karabus's release on humanitarian grounds. The developments in this story were a series of 'almost-free-but-not-quite' incidents, with Karabus eventually returning home on May 17, 2013, several weeks after he had been acquitted by a court on all charges. The challenges that prolonged the process included an appeal against his acquittal, and not being able to get a passport at some stage. Thus the coverage read like a yo-yo – one day news reports saying his family was 'elated' he would be coming home soon, the next day they were 'lamenting' the delays.

5.5.2 SABC coverage of this story

The exigence around this particular story was the unexpected and unusual arrest of the South African paediatrician, as well as the difficulties that he faced in his endeavours to return home. The situation demanded a rhetorical response because the South African media needed to give citizens an awareness of the diplomatic processes, should a similar situation befall them. Would it be a matter of the individual trying to sort out his or her legal woes alone, or would there be hands-on involvement by the South African government?

In light of this, the coverage employed the judicial genre of rhetoric: both blaming the South African government for not having laws that prevent such occurrences, and also praising the Department of International Relations and Cooperation for its involvement in diplomatic endeavours to help Karabus return home. Without blatantly asking questions about whether

Karabus's detention was justified, the reports raised questions about whether it was right that such a fate had befallen him. From the initial report, coverage was skewed in Karabus's favour. This included the journalist reporting: "The Department of International Relations and Co-operation has called on all South African to pray for the completion of the case", "After a seven month legal battle, a South African academic, held in the United Arab Emirates, is finally coming home", "charges the 77-year old Karabus was unaware of for over a decade until his arrest in Dubai in August last year. Since then he's been battling to clear his name" and "The return of Cape Town paediatrician, Cyril Karabus, from the United Arab Emirates, after his acquittal this week in Abu Dhabi has suffered a major setback". The reporter never once filed a report that suggested that Karabus might have had a case to answer to, neither was there a report that gave the perspective of the United Arab Emirates. All the interviews included were those of people who were sympathetic to Karabus, almost similar to the manner in which a lawyer would only include witnesses and evidence that bolsters his client's case.

The SABC gave this story blow-by-blow coverage, predominantly employing the classic reporting communicative frame by giving daily updates of how far along the process was, and what the latest developments were. Occasionally there would be a focus on how the delays in Karabus's release were affecting his family, and here the reportage frame would be used to "go behind the scenes of 'thin' news reports and provide 'thick' descriptions of reality" (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 351). The story was initially pegged on the novelty news value because of the strange manner in which this South African professor was suddenly arrested on charges he was not even aware he was facing in a foreign country. As the story progressed, and developments played out in a court in Abu Dhabi, the news value peg was timeliness, with the reporting focused mainly on the latest developments.

Visually, the SABC relied quite notably on file footage obtained during a visit by South African government officials, including the then-Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Marius Fransman. This footage was used over and over again, particularly when reference was being made to how Karabus was doing while in detention, or when referring to the legal processes in Abu Dhabi. When featuring reports on the impact the developments had on his family, new footage was obtained from the homes of Karabus's children. These images included in-studio interviews, as well as interviews in some very intimate settings, such as a bedroom in one of the family homes.

The reports on this story primarily drew on the *pathos* proof, as the reporter used Karabus's age and ailing health, his family's apprehensions and disappointments, and the involvement of the government, to evoke sympathy from viewers. The employment of the personalisation communicative frame of reporting supported the use of the *pathos* proof, because it enabled Karabus's legal woes to move from being about an unknown professor, to coverage about an old man who had a family that was anxious for him to return home. The emotional interviews with Karabus's children were especially instrumental in this, as they showed that he was missing out on important developments in their lives because of being 'wrongfully arrested'. The *pathos* proof was further emphasised in the blow-by-blow coverage that this story received as viewers were taken on an almost daily journey with Karabus and his family, as they awaited to see whether he would eventually be released or not.

The reporting should have also drawn on the *logos* proof, as it argued the merits, or lack thereof, of Karabus's detention. As has been noted, there was no report that really delved into the reasons for the arrest from the UAE's perspective. This would have served in educating the public about how to avoid finding themselves in a similar situation. There was one report that alluded to South Africa's extradition treaties with other nations, and this somewhat touched on the underlying reasons behind Karabus's detention. This is explained in greater detail in the subsection below

5.5.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

The linguistic devices most commonly employed in the reporting on this story drew on the viewers' emotions. The story itself – with its setbacks and comebacks – fostered an atmosphere of uncertainty and anxiety. By relying on the interviews with Karabus's children, and Karabus himself, in order to personalise the ordeal, the story was able to move beyond being about an unknown professor who happened to fall foul with the law, to a story about a father and grandfather who missed out on important family milestones because of unfair imprisonment. The coverage on March 29, 2013, for example, which referred to the fact that Karabus would be spending his birthday in prison, emphasised the professor's humanity. Further, the use of words and phrases such as "battle" and "setbacks" to describe the legal

developments in this case gave the impression of two parties at loggerheads with each other – on the one hand the powerful United Arab Emirates government, on the other an aging academic who did not even know he had charges to answer to.

As the story developed, and coverage was drawn out because of delays, the SABC broadened its angles to highlight the fact that, because of South Africa's laws around prison treaties, the fate that befell Karabus could actually happen to any South African. This changed the reporting frame from classical reporting, which had largely been employed in the coverage, to a combination of the campaign and the community service frames. According to Cottle and Rai (2008), the campaign frame of reporting is rarely used in South African television reporting, and involves a news outlet declaring its stance on an issue or cause, and seeking to galvanise sympathies around it beyond the world of journalism. The community service frame explicitly advises the audience on what a certain piece of information means and how it will impact their lives (Cottle & Rai, 2008). The combination of these reporting frames was evidenced in the journalist's repeated referrals to 'human rights', and suggestions that Karabus was not able to enjoy his because South Africa's laws did not adequately protect people in his situation. A clear example of this was when the journalist said "Pretoria cannot intervene when its citizens' human rights are being violated. This means that guilty or innocent, all South Africans incarcerated abroad are vulnerable." This portion of the script educated the public on South Africa's stance on the extradition of its citizens arrested abroad, while also casting a negative spin on these laws through the use of phrases and words such as "human rights...violated", "Pretoria cannot intervene", and "all South Africans incarcerated abroad are vulnerable." The accompanying footage also played into the emotive words used. Visuals of an ailing Karabus, including those of women who are behind bars, highlighted the unpleasantness of the situation.

Thus, overall, the SABC succeeded in making its coverage of this story relevant and in portraying itself as authoritative on all the important elements through its reports. The blow-by-blow reporting, coupled with numerous fresh interviews with the family, as well as the broader discussion on the legal issues that had given rise to Karabus's arrest, were convincing and persuasive, giving the broadcaster credibility.

5.6 De Doorns Bus Crash

5.6.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

On March 15, 2013, twenty-four people died and many others were injured when the bus they were travelling in crashed, after its brakes failed in the Hex River Pass, near De Doorns in the Western Cape. The group of around eighty people had come from a church gathering in Mpumalanga. The story broke on March 15, 2013, when the accident occurred, and coverage by the SABC was concluded on March 22, 2013 when the last of the people who had died in the incident was buried.

5.6.2 SABC coverage of this story

The exigence that gave rise to the coverage of this story was a bus crash that led to the death of twenty-four people. Initially it seemed as though the rhetorical situation would be centred on discovering how the crash had happened and who would be held responsible. However as the story progressed, the focus shifted, and the exigence for the continued coverage was the elaborate ceremonial events following the deaths. Because of the number of people involved, the story was largely centred on its visual appeal, and the coverage was focused on the scale of the loss and mourning.

The SABC gave this accident blow-by-blow coverage, featuring it prominently from the moment the crash occurred, until the last of the twenty-four dead had been buried. In total the story was in the bulletin for seven of the nine days that it developed. It was the lead story for the first two days after the incident. The dominant communicative frame used to report on it was the contention frame, which drew on a plurality of perspectives of the accident, including the insights of traffic officials, family members, the church involved, and survivors (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 348 – 349). The story encompassed a number of news values including negativity – because it involved death; superlativeness – the unusually high number of people who died in the incident; and consonance – because the stretch of road in question is infamous for crashes. There were also a few instances where personalisation was a notable news value in the reports, as reports on individuals affected were featured.

The visuals played into all of these news values because of the harrowing footage of the crash with the bus lying on its side, bodies strewn on the road, and a heavy contingent of medical and law enforcement personnel at work. Beyond the accident scene, footage from the memorial services for the deceased was particularly unusual, with hundreds of the church's members in attendance, wearing identical church uniforms, construing superlativeness on the story. The close-up shots of emotional family members also made the story newsworthy from a visual perspective, as viewers were confronted with the raw devastation of those who had lost their loved ones in the crash. But of all the images, the most striking visuals were those of the 'mass symbolic funeral' held for twenty three of the twenty four deceased. Twenty three coffins were lined up side by side on the pitch of a stadium where the service was held, with thousands of church members, wearing identical uniforms, in attendance. The scale of the occasion was unprecedented and out of the ordinary. Thus, even though this story was not really carried forward because of new information emerging regarding what had caused the accident, it received prominent coverage because of its compelling visuals.

The coverage of this story should have employed the judicial genre of rhetoric, as the reporter sought to find out who was to blame for a bus crash of that magnitude. However, the scale of the events around the deaths, namely the prayer and funeral services, changed this into a story that was characterised by the epideictic genre of rhetoric, as the story was centred on these occasions. Subsequently, the reports filed were "produced as show-pieces" which focused on the magnitude of the loss, as demonstrated by the coverage which focused on the number of those killed, the number of mourners and the structuring of the various services (Cicero, 1949). Of the three genres of rhetoric, the epideictic genre is the one that is employed for ceremonies, commemorations, declamations and demonstrations. In terms of television news reports, it comes through most prominently in stories about funerals, memorial services or public addresses. In this regard Salazar notes that "epideictic rhetoric is akin to a "performative" speech a "speech-act" whereby words create a reality" (2002: 11). These types of stories often draw on the rhetoric expressed in the addresses given on these occasions, and either set out to praise or blame. In this case, the news reports are written in such a way as to lament the senseless death of so many people through a vehicle crash— an occurrence that is all too familiar in South Africa. The epideictic rhetoric is geared at bemoaning a sense of carelessness on the country's roads, and is 'performed' through the scores of mourners depicted in the memorial and funeral services held for the deceased.

In terms of the rhetorical proofs used in the coverage of the news reports around the De Doorns bus crash, this was another story where the reporting should have employed the *logos* proof in order to give viewers a better understanding of what happened and who was responsible. However, the emotive appeal of the visuals meant that the reporting lent itself towards the *pathos* proof. The employment of this proof may have been an attempt by the broadcaster to avoid doing the investigative work needed to help uncover who was responsible for the crash, and instead to focus on the grief and the emotions of those left behind. By drawing on these, the SABC used the emotive angle, expressed in the *pathos* proof, as a justification for not providing a logical context to the crash.

So far, three of the stories discussed above have tended to employ the *pathos* proof, where the *logos* proof would have been more appropriate. Further, it appears that the broadcaster is prone to being distracted from deliberating on what has given rise to a set of difficult circumstances, and instead deviates in its coverage to focus on the aftermath of those circumstances, and that aftermath is usually inconsequential in the larger context. Thus, for instance, as important as the funerals and memorials services for the thirteen soldiers who died in the CAR were, the services did not really answer the pertinent questions around the incident. Yet, the public broadcaster devoted considerable resources to covering this aspect of the story. Similarly, instead of focusing on how twenty-four people could have died in a bus crash, the SABC chose to devote its time to covering their funerals, which, although may have been interesting to observe, did not really add any worthwhile information. Both these stories lent themselves towards coverage that should have drawn on logic and a judicial approach, but this did not happen. At the end of the nine days of the coverage of the De Doorns bus crash, viewers were left without information on how the crash happened or who was to blame. There was no indication that the broadcaster would pursue further investigations in this regard.

5.6.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

This story was framed as an unusual tragedy. When the story first aired on March 15, 2013, phrases such as “horrific bus accident”, “worst bus accident”, “ill-fated liner” showed the employment of the linguistic device of intensification and negativity, in order to convey the magnitude of the tragedy of the occurrence. As the story developed, its tragic nature

remained the primary focus, even though the reporter could have pursued an investigative angle because the cause of the incident still remained unknown, and the bus company was never thoroughly called upon to account as to why the brakes had failed. The investigative frame is alluded to in passing, in the report filed on March 15, 2013, when the journalist notes that “The owner of Atlantic Charters and Tours sent condolences to the families of the deceased, but declined to speak to the media at the scene. He will release a statement after consulting the company’s lawyers.” No such statement was ever subsequently reported on. The failure to pursue the investigative angle was perhaps due to the fact that the superlative nature of the story, that is, the sheer magnitude of the people affected, the heart-wrenching grief, the shocking crash scene and the unusual prayer and funeral services, made for more compelling television footage than a bland angle on the investigation. Nevertheless, as a public broadcaster, the SABC has an obligation to report on stories in a way that investigates the underlying issues and that holds powerful entities, such as companies and government, to account, on behalf of citizens. The investigative reporting frame is the best way to do this, but unfortunately in this story, and many others, the SABC fails to use this approach. Thus, by failing to take the story forward, beyond the tragedy and towards an understanding of how the accident occurred, the SABC fails to persuade viewers of its credibility as a broadcaster that focuses on all the important aspects of a story.

An aspect where the public broadcaster did succeed in how it covered this story was the use of visuals. Other than the file footage of the crash, the SABC was able to use fresh visuals and interviews for each of the days that it covered this story. This kept the novelty of the story going, giving the impression that the public broadcaster was up to date in its coverage. Further, other than the voice of the bus owner, most of the significant role players were afforded an opportunity to comment on this story, further strengthening the SABC’s coverage. Thus with regard to this aspect, the public broadcaster can be deemed to have succeeded in persuading viewers that its version of events were indeed credible and up to date.

This story is a clear example that in any given story, the public broadcaster has certain aspects where its coverage is particularly strong and persuasive and others where it is not. It is important to highlight this because a television news channel’s ability to persuade its audiences relies on a number of things, and success in one area does not necessarily mean success in all areas.

5.7 Hugo Chavez Dies

5.7.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

Venezuela's president, Hugo Chavez, died on March 5, 2013, after having been diagnosed with cancer in 2011. His funeral was held on March 8, 2013, and the South African Communist Party held a memorial service in his honour in Pretoria on March 14, 2013. Both events were covered on SABC 3's English news bulletin.

5.7.2 SABC coverage of this story

The death of Hugo Chavez, while he was a sitting president, was one of the major international news stories of 2013. As such the exigence for covering this story was the fact that Chavez had died. The SABC's coverage of this story relied primarily on footage and content from international news agencies, such as Venezuela TV, for images, and Reuters for content. The only aspect of the story that was produced originally by the broadcaster was the memorial service held in his honour by the South African Communist Party. It is debatable whether it would have been worthwhile for the SABC to deploy its own news crew to Venezuela to cover developments during and after the funeral. On the one hand, as Africa's largest broadcaster, it certainly has the resources to do this, and further, this story was important globally, given Chavez's place in international politics. The public mourning and the opportunity to view his body while it was in-state would have generated some compelling interviews and visuals for the broadcaster. However, reporting on the death of a state leader like Chavez follows a pretty standard approach – highlighting important people and nations who express their condolences, reflecting on the sentiments in the country, looking back at his legacy, and discussing scenarios about the way forward.

The challenge that arose from relying on footage from Venezuela TV was that there were no interviews or recorded speeches included as part of the news reports. It is not clear whether Venezuela TV opted not to do interviews at all, or whether these were simply not given to the SABC. But this lack of interviews meant that the viewers were forced to rely solely on the reporter's interpretation of what was going on. This interpretation was based on secondary information from Reuters. Thus the coverage really was limited to fairly poor visuals from

Venezuela TV, and a voice over by the reporter, making for television news reports that were not very interesting. The coverage of the memorial service held by the South African Communist Party in Johannesburg on March 14, 2013, was largely reliant on an address given by an SACP official from the programme, and also did not feature follow up interviews. There were visuals of a group of SACP members gathered in a hall for the service, and that was primarily all the footage available.

The SABC's coverage of this story mainly employed the dominant communicative frame, because a single "perspective or view", namely that of the journalist (or rather the news source that the journalist had obtained her information from) "clearly 'dominates' the communicative frame and either remains unopposed or receives, at most, marginal challenge" (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 347 – 348). Thus when the journalist subjectively described Chavez as "a hero for the poor" renowned for his "visionary leadership" there was no other 'voice' to either affirm or counter this view. It was simply included as fact, even though it clearly was not. The danger in employing this reporting frame for a character such as Chavez, who was loved by some, and loathed by others, is that those who fall into the latter group may feel as though the report did not portray their point of view, and thus rightly view it as being biased, making it very difficult for the public broadcaster to convince them of its credibility in how it reported. This kind of reporting occurred again when the SABC chose to cover the SACP's memorial service, where Chavez was lauded as "a great example", and esteemed because "for him, revolution, and loyalty to the revolution were like religion". Once again the news report did not feature interviews that spoke directly into this statement, either to challenge or to confirm it.

The news values on which this story was pegged were negativity – death; timeliness – Hugo Chavez's funeral; prominence – his status as a sitting president; impact – the fact that the country would be forced to hold early elections to find a successor; and superlativeness – the large number of world leaders and millions of Venezuelans who were present to mourn his death. The visuals were also newsworthy. The thousands of people who lined the streets on the day of his funeral, and the large crowds in red apparel captured on file footage from the political rallies Chavez addressed, conferred superlativeness on the occasion. The footage of the numerous world leaders gathered at the funeral played on the news value of prominence – not just of Chavez, but of the people who were present to pay their condolences. The footage featuring Chavez, either the still photos of him giving a salute, or another politically-laden

gesture such as a raised fist, as well as the video footage of his interactions with Venezuelans while he was still alive, was also deliberately chosen to confer the status of a loved and respected leader. No doubt there were other photos and videos available to the journalist portraying a very different picture of the man, however in line with the positive spin she had chosen to use in her script, the images and visuals selected also portrayed Chavez in a positive light.

The coverage employed the epideictic genre of rhetoric, as it highlighted Chavez's significance in global and local politics, in light of the occasion of his death and funeral, and depicted the values of being "pro-poor", and a leader who was "loved" by the people because he could relate to them. The reports followed the form of a eulogy, focused mainly on praising Chavez for the good he had done, even though there were controversial elements to his tenure. There was a need for the reporter to support her claims that he was a "loved leader" and "champion of the poor" with statements from ordinary people in this regard. Merely stating these claims in a news report without a single interview that supports this comes across as very subjective especially in the case of a leader like Chavez.

The rhetorical proof employed to report on this story was mainly the *pathos* proof, as visuals of emotional Venezuelans were on full display. This approach was fitting for the occasion because the death of a world leader is not primarily about logic, but about the emotions felt. The reporting fell short, however, by not also drawing on the *ethos* proof, and featuring sound bites from other world leaders to speak on Chavez and his legacy, and adding the needed element of personality to the coverage. When a world leader dies, his importance and standing in global politics is often seen through those who attend his funeral, and what they have to say about him. The news reports on Chavez's death notably lacked the *ethos* proof, which would have come through in sentiments from other world leaders.

5.7.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

News coverage of the funeral of a state leader is more than just merely reporting on the service. It is about summing up the individual's most pertinent achievements and failures, as well as observing which other state leaders are present or absent at the occasion. A news agency that chooses not to cover the funeral live has a few minutes to summarise the leader's

entire legacy in a brief news report, and in the situation of a foreign leader, the points they choose to focus on will most likely be relevant to the reporter's country. The journalist reporting for the SABC focused markedly on the respect and adoration that Chavez enjoyed from "millions of Venezuelans". Because she was not present at the funeral herself, the 'respect and adoration' that she reported on was probably garnered from the footage, not from having been on the ground and ascertaining these sentiments herself. The linguistic devices of intensification, expressed in phrases such as "emotionally charged", "worshipped"; and quantification "devastated millions of Venezuelans" were used with the intention of adding gravitas to the occasion. Further, there was a sense of evaluation in the journalist's reporting, because she interpreted the situation and impressions of the people of Venezuela, without having been there herself, or having interviews to back up what she was saying.

Had the news reports on Chavez been framed as an obituary, then the absence of interviews in the coverage would have been understandable. However, it was framed as a funeral service for a "loved" leader and a "champion of the poor". The use of these very opinionated phrases warranted sound bites that would back up these claims. Perhaps the footage of the scores of mourners at his funeral was used as a 'show rather than tell' approach which is common in television. However because these descriptions are very subjective, they needed to be backed up by relevant interviews, even if it was simply *vox pops* of a few of mourners to articulate for themselves why they were there. Had the SABC done this, then it would have been more credible in its coverage of this story.

In the reporting there was no indication of the direct impact of Chavez's death on South Africa, although it is possible that this was done in other bulletins not considered by this dissertation. The news report on the SACP's memorial service was perhaps an endeavour to link the occasion to an event closer to home.

The success of the SABC's reports, was in discussing the uncertainty that the country faced as a result of his passing. When a world leader dies, while in power, the obvious question is what will happen next, and it was fitting for the coverage to include a discussion on the pending political developments, even though the focus was on Chavez's funeral. Thus in this regard, the broadcaster successfully employed a tactic that positioned it as credible and up-to-date in its coverage.

5.8 Human Rights Day

5.8.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

The 21st of March is a political public holiday in South Africa called Human Rights Day. It commemorates the sixty-nine people who died in the Sharpeville Massacre on this day in 1960. The massacre happened as thousands of black South Africans protested against their movements being restricted by the apartheid government which was forcing them to carry pass books. Commemorative celebrations and services are usually held on the day, organised by political and civil society organizations, with a ‘main’ event usually being addressed by the president or another senior government official.

5.8.2 SABC coverage of this story

The SABC’s coverage of political public holidays usually involves reporting on various events taking place around the country. The different regions cover at least one event in their area, and these are then brought together in a single package, or a wrap. The government hosts an official event which usually receives the bulk of the coverage. In 2013 the official Human Rights Day celebrations were held in Mbokweni, in Paarl, an area that had had a spike in reported incidents of violence perpetrated against women and children.

The exigence that gave rise to a news report on Human Rights Day was the fact that the day marks a significant political holiday in South Africa. In covering this story the SABC employed a number of communicative frames: the contention frame where “a plurality of voices/perspectives may be presented [that] represent something of the complexity of positions and points of view”; the reportage frame, which followed a few people whose lives were directly affected by the massacre in 1960 and for whom the anniversary is especially significant; as well as the cultural recognition frame which “refers to consensual items that not only represent, but also symbolise and/or affirm shared values and community ideals” in this case, the historic event being commemorated (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 347 – 352). This varied framing is typical of the SABC for occasions of this nature because in a sense the report is comprised of a number of shorter reports compiled by different journalists across the country, which are then put together and packaged as the Human Rights Day news report.

There were two other reports that were packaged as stand-alones in relation to this story - one was the renaming of a number of streets in Cape Town, in honour of former anti-apartheid struggle icons, and the other was the reburial of the remains of a farm worker who had been refused permission to be buried on the farm where he worked in the North-West Province.

The news values on which the primary story was pegged were: timeliness - the fact that it was Human Rights Day; prominence - the political leaders who made respective public addresses; and political proximity - the day has great political significance in South Africa. The stand-alone packages were pegged on different news values. The story on the street name changes in Cape Town was pegged on novelty - the new names of these well-known streets; prominence - the struggle icons after whom the streets were being named; and personalisation - the fact that interviews were done with the family members of these struggle icons. The story on the reburial of the farm worker was pegged on personalisation, as it followed the ceremony, and dedicated time to interviewing a family member on what the day meant to him. Visually, the primary package featured a great deal of political symbolism - from political party apparel, through to well-known political leaders, and crowds gathered in large venues. Many of the leaders did their interviews surrounded by large crowds, or were featured speaking from the podium; both contexts which are symbolic of the power and status that these leaders hold. The stand-alone packages, on the other hand, consisted primarily of footage relevant to the respective stories – the relevant streets being renamed and the people who they were being named after, and the reburial ceremony. As opposed to the primary package where the footage primarily revolved around people, the footage for these packages focused on place - with a greater focus on the scene and what was happening.

By virtue of it being a national holiday which marks a significant day in the country's history, the coverage of the day's events employed the epideictic genre of rhetoric, as the lives that were lost were remembered. Consequently, the values of self-sacrifice, which they espoused on behalf of future generation, were highlighted, in the hope of charting a way forward in terms of human rights in the country today. The epideictic genre was also the most suitable, given the fact that most of the stories were about an address given by a politician, either remembering what had happened under apartheid, or looking ahead at the state of human rights preservations in the democratic dispensation. These addresses highlighted the fact that in order for the Sharpeville deaths not to have been in vain, future generations should ensure that various human rights, including socio-economic and political, are preserved.

The coverage drew on the *ethos* and *pathos* proofs, as the stature of those featured, as well as the emotions around the day, became the key focus. The event that saw President Jacob Zuma giving a key-note address was filed as the lead story of the evening, primarily because of his involvement. The other events that were covered were included because they involved other significant politicians, and it was their character that became the key focus of the coverage. In terms of the *pathos* proof, the 21st of March will always be an emotional day for South Africans because it marks a very dark day in the country's past. Even without including stories that vividly showed the emotions of those who were affected by the day, coverage of events around the day evokes emotions. The coverage on March 21, 2013, drew on some highly emotional stories, including the reburial of a farm worker who had been refused burial on the farm where he died, because of the colour of his skin, as well as the erection of memorial plaques for those who had died in Sharpeville. By featuring the personalised stories of those affected, the reports employed the *pathos* proof very effectively. Given that South Africa has a considerable number of political holidays, coverage of these days reminds South Africans about what happened and explores the relevance of those historical events to today.

5.8.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

For the primary Human Rights Day package, the journalist's introduction does not refer to human rights directly, but rather to "socio-economic rights" which she then goes on to link with the country's past, where "the legacy of apartheid is still prevalent in many communities." This approach took what might otherwise have been seen as a political event with little relevance to present day South Africa, and located it in the context of the socio-economic challenges that are at the forefront of the minds of many South Africans. The topics and themes that dominated this report were police brutality, as well as women and child abuse - issues that had been extremely topical in the time period under consideration. The stand-alone reports did not fit the political narrative of the main package which is why they probably were not included in that package. These stand-alone reports both attempted to demonstrate that the occurrences of the past had implications for the present. Unlike the features that made up the broader package, where the interviewees were politicians, the interviews in these reports were with ordinary people.

The SABC succeeded in coming across as credible in its reports on Human Rights Day in so far as it framed its coverage of the day as a political public holiday. The majority of the interviews conducted were with political party representatives, and the respective parties used the coverage as an opportunity to increase their visibility by having their leaders featured, and through the presence of their respective apparel and branding. This is worth noting because various other types of organisations, including non-governmental organisation, also probably held events to mark Human Right's Day, but none of these were featured in the package.

5.9 Kenyan Elections

5.9.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

On March 4, 2013, Kenya held its general elections, and the results were announced on the March 9, 2013, with Uhuru Kenyatta being elected as president. The elections were closely monitored by the world's media, following the 2007/2008 electoral crisis that saw violent clashes between the different party supporters in that country. When the challenger, Raila Odinga, disputed the result of the 2013 poll and threatened court action, there was concern that similar conflicts would arise. However, calm was restored after Odinga decided to accept the outcome.

5.9.2 SABC coverage of this story

The exigence on which coverage of this story was based was the fact that national elections had taken place in Kenya, and given the violence that had followed the 2008 elections, there was keen interest to see whether the results would be accepted by all the relevant parties or whether there would be fierce, and perhaps even violent, contestation. The issue of elections is a very emotive one in many African countries. A number of leaders refuse to fully and peacefully embrace the outcome of elections if a result is not favourable to them, and this in turn often provokes supporters to instigate violence. As the leading economic powerhouse on the continent, as well as a global example of relatively peaceful regime change, South Africa often plays a key role in observing and mediating in deadlocks that arise from elections on the continent. Further, given the number of foreign African nationals living in South Africa, the outcome of elections in most African countries is of significance to SABC viewers. As

such, the coverage of this story was pegged on timeliness - the elections had just been held; prominence - the political clout of the two main presidential candidates; impact - the implication should the elections not be deemed to have been free and fair; and novelty - the fact that Kenya would have a new president. There were also some stories that were pegged on negativity when Odinga was said to be contesting the outcome, a move that could have resulted in a repeat of the 2007/2008 electoral crisis.

The communicative frame employed in the news reports on this story was the classical reporting frame which saw the stories being angled mainly towards giving updates on the latest developments. One had also expected to see reports filed using the contest frame, which features opposing views afforded equal weight; however none of the reports included sound bites with differing views. The reports usually featured a sound bite expressing the view of one party, and then the journalist would script around that. Even in the report about Odinga contesting the election results, filed on March 11, 2013, the two sound bites that were featured both came from organisations that were not happy with the outcome, which is unusual since one would expect an opposing view to be featured alongside these as a way of 'balancing' the story. Most of the sound bites used in the news reports on this story were obtained while the different political and judicial newsmakers were giving addresses from the podium, or in the case of the Supreme Court judge, from the bench. That is to say there were no follow-up interviews done by the journalist to probe opinions further. There were also no *vox pops* done with ordinary Kenyans to afford them an opportunity to articulate their impressions of the elections and the outcome, something which is unusual for stories about elections.

In terms of the visuals used, there was a considerable amount of footage depicting the 'business' of tallying election results - shots of ballot papers, electoral observers, politicians at the counting centre, and of course the official announcement of the results. These gave the impression that the SABC had its own news crew reporting on location, and did not rely merely on secondary sources. There was also considerable footage that featured ordinary Kenyans - shots of them standing in voting queues, shots of them attending rallies, and shots of them celebrating in the streets, although no interviews were conducted with them.

The primary genre of rhetoric employed in the coverage of this story was deliberative, as the reports focused on what was to come, both in terms of who would eventually become president and what the implications of the outcome would be for Kenya. Prior to the announcement of the winner, the journalist used statements such as: “The anxious wait for Kenyans continues. The country is yet to know who will be the president between Prime Minister Raila Odinga and Uhuru Kenyatta”, and “the question of who will now take the most coveted seat in the country – that of the president – remains unanswered.” The same approach was employed shortly after the announcement, when the reporter stated that, “Kenya has a new president but... threatens court action”, “Besides the legal hurdles in Kenya...” and “With a peaceful election and disputes resolved legally Kenyans now seem determined to avoid a repeat of the 2007 post electoral violence.” These statements conveyed a sense of deliberating on an uncertain future for Kenya. The rhetorical proof employed seems to have largely been of a *logos* nature, where the reporter employed sound reasoning to ascertain why certain events had arisen. The reporting traced the political dynamics in Kenya, recalled the country’s past and charted some possible scenarios about the future. For a report of this nature, this approach was suitable because there are indeed uncertainties whenever an election occurs, especially in a country that had previously seen people dying because of a highly contested result. So, if the angle used to report on developments is about deliberating on what is to come, it is best that this approach be done through employing logic, as opposed to emotion or the character of the personalities who are deemed to be central to the story.

5.9.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

In light of the violence that marred the previous Kenyan elections, the 2013 polls were particularly important for African broadcasters. The fact that the SABC had a reporter covering the vote in Kenya meant that it was in a position to report of first-hand impressions of developments and sentiments on the ground. This is important in terms of credibility, because often when broadcasters cover election results in other countries, they do not necessarily deploy a team, and can thus not provide contextual considerations from a first-hand perspective. Having a reporter, based in Kenya, made the coverage more credible because her analysis of the sentiments, after the results were announced, was not based on hearsay, but rather her own journalistic observations. Having said that, the journalist’s own

observations featured more than they should have in the script, and there were absolutely no interviews that provided added insight and interpretation of these stories. Given that this was a significant election for Kenya, one would have expected at least one interview with a political analyst to contextualise the issues, both before and after the results were announced. While one cannot be completely certain of the ease with which such interviews could have been facilitated, considering past coverage of elections in Kenya by the SABC, where follow-up interviews were undertaken, one can say with reasonable confidence that with sufficient planning, such an interview could have been conducted – if not immediately after the announcement of the result, then a few days afterwards. If interviews with these politicians were absolutely impossible, then the journalists could have deferred to their spokespersons, who are there to articulate their views. Either way, it was important for the credibility of the coverage of this story for the journalist to have been seen to have gone beyond just reporting on the results, and to have provided context and reaction through interviews. For a broadcaster's coverage of elections to be persuasive and to be deemed credible, it must include interviews with the main candidates, or at least people who speak on their behalf, because it is through these that the watchdog role of the media is best performed. It is not sufficient for journalists to say obtaining these interviews was hard because that is an important part of the job. In this case, the lack of follow-up interviews with the politicians, both Odinga and Kenyatta, demonstrated a failure to play the watchdog role of the media effectively, namely holding leaders to account. Without a doubt, there were significant things that were said and done on the campaign trail that the journalist should have probed the respective leaders on, but she did not do that. Further she could have asked basic questions about the implications of the victory or loss for the respective candidates. Instead she merely used sound bites obtained from the addresses given by the candidates during press briefings or rallies. This is a very obvious failure because there is very little purpose in deploying a reporter to a political story if she is not going to hold the leaders to account through interviews. Thus, in this regard, the SABC's reporting on this story fails to be credible because it fails to play the watchdog role of the media.

Another feature that is surprising is that even though there was reference to the clashes that arose in the previous elections, there was no archived footage used from that time in any of the 2013 Kenyan election news reports. The journalist's scripting merely mentioned the clashes in passing, and was not accompanied by visuals of the conflict. This is notable because the absence of these types of pictures from this story would be as problematic as

leaving out the iconic visuals of the long election queues, in a story about the 1994 South African elections. The clashes of 2007/2008 were so significant to the Kenyan political landscape that at the time of writing this dissertation, Kenyatta faced charges of crimes against humanity at the International Criminal Court for his role in the deaths of more than a thousand people. It is not clear why these visuals were not included, and the SABC could have a legitimate reason, however, this omission makes its reporting less credible.

What the reporter did well was in sticking to the facts of the story in the voice-over segments, and not conveying her own opinion as fact. In a news story like this, there is a great deal of scope for journalists to give their own impressions and pass them off as facts. But in sticking strictly to reporting on who said what, and when, she avoided this, which was to her credit, and which added to the credibility of the reports. The reporting also succeeded in giving a balanced view of how the election unfolded, without being overly negative or positive as is often the case when it comes to elections in African countries that have previously been marred by post-electoral violence. Further, while the journalist expounded on what the visuals showed, she did not draw inferences on occurrences that were not evident in the shots taken. Thus, in this respects, the SABC can be deemed to have succeeded in persuading viewers that its coverage of this story was credible.

5.10 Marikana Commission of Inquiry

5.10.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

The death of 34 striking miners at the hands of police at Lonmin's Marikana mine on August 16, 2012 was a watershed moment in South Africa, and the country's media. Not since the days of apartheid had so many people died in clashes with police in a labour-related dispute. Further, most media houses, including the SABC, had been present at the scene in Marikana on the day that the shooting occurred, capturing footage of the miners as they were being shot and killed by police. In light of the deaths, a commission of inquiry was set up to attempt to understand how the tragedy happened and who was to blame. During the time period considered by this dissertation, the commission was still underway, and one of the people called to testify was the country's Police Commissioner, General Riah Phiyega. Phiyega gave testimony on a number of issues, including remarks she had made a few days after the

shooting in which she praised police for their actions, saying what had happened represented “the best of responsible policing”. Her testimony will be significant when the commission eventually makes its findings because she was testifying in her capacity as the head of the police, and in effect giving their version of who gave the order for the miners to be shot with live ammunition, bypassing many of the procedures around responsible public order policing.

Other significant developments that occurred, during the time of this research, included one of the miners who survived being shot giving his testimony at the commission, as well as a visit by the commission to the site where five of the people who died in the incident were killed. The delegation that accompanied the commission included the family members of those who were killed, and the occasion was highly emotional. There was also a demonstration at the commission by a civil society organisation, who were displeased with the manner in which Phiyega was testifying, calling on her to “tell the truth”. There was also coverage about a suggestion that the commission should be moved from the North-West province to Johannesburg in Gauteng to make it more accessible to the family members of the deceased miners who were not from Marikana. A related development which affected the commission directly, but did not occur in Marikana, was the killing of a *sangoma* who was believed to have assisted miners in performing rituals that would allegedly help them be impervious to bullets. This occurred on the March 23, 2013, and the report was filed alongside an update of what had happened at the inquiry in Marikana that day.

5.10.2 SABC Coverage of this story

The exigence that gave rise to the coverage was a commission of inquiry that was launched following the death of forty-four people, including thirty-four miners, in Marikana during labour-related unrest at the Lonmin platinum mine in 2012. The commission of inquiry was launched to ascertain who was responsible for the deaths and coverage of the proceedings was to keep viewers informed as to the deliberations. Given the many significant developments which occurred with regards to this story, the SABC’s coverage seems to have been pegged on almost every single news value. Negativity- because the commission arose as a result of the death of at least 34 people; timeliness - because the commission of inquiry into the tragedy was underway; prominence - because the role players at the time included the National Police Commissioner, as well as the lawyer who had represented Nelson Mandela

and his co-accused at the Rivonia Treason trial during the apartheid era, Advocate George Bizos. The coverage was also pegged on impact- because what unfolded at the commission would have a bearing on how South Africans understood the violation of human rights in the democratic dispensation; consonance- because the story spoke into prevailing perceptions about police brutality at the time; novelty - because of allegations that miners used *muti* and the unusual demonstration by a civil society group during the hearing. Finally, there was evident personalisation - because there were at least two reports filed where the grief of family members was a focus, moving the story from being about 34 unknown dead men, to husbands and fathers whose deaths had left their loved ones devastated. With all of these elements present, it is no wonder that the SABC afforded this story the kind of prominent and frequent coverage that it did.

The communicative frames used in the reports were predominantly the classical reporting frame, which provided information about the latest developments, and the contest frame, which put two opposing views side by side, and was ideal for such cases. The broader Marikana story obviously extends beyond the commission, but as it took place during the time period under consideration, the commission was the most significant development, and it was thus fitting that the coverage was largely focused on the testimonies being given. The updates provided by the SABC 3 English news bulletin kept South Africans informed on the latest evidence presented. The footage used was from the hearings, as well as from the August 16, 2012 shooting, and Riah Phiyega's address to police in August 2012.

The genre of rhetoric employed in the coverage was judicial because the setup of the commission was such that the legal representatives of the different parties sought to absolve their clients of any responsibility for the deaths. In the time period under consideration the National Police Commissioner, Riah Phiyega, was being cross-examined, and the reporting was presented so as to ascertain whether her version of events, and hence that of the police, made sense. The judicial aspect came through most notably in how the reports deliberated on whether her testimony was believable.

The rhetorical proof most notably employed also sought to ascertain the credibility of Phiyega's version, using *logos* primarily, as the reporter gave a logical sequence of how proceeding had unfolded and what some of the key considerations were. From March 27, 2013, the reports also employed the *ethos* proof as the lawyer who had represented Nelson

Mandela and his counterparts in the Rivonia trial, George Bizos, questioned Phiyega on the police's involvement in the killings. In introducing Bizos, the reporter noted: "Legendary human rights lawyer, advocate George Bizos took centre stage at the Marikana Commission." This report became about how this legendary lawyer squared up against the country's highest ranking police official, and these two charismatic characters were pitted against each other. The coverage devoted time to the exchange that ensued between Bizos and Phiyega, and even though the discussion was quite telling in terms of what transpired on the day the miners were shot in 2012, the focus was on the 'duel' that unfolded between these two prominent people. The presence of these important people conferred a certain level of importance on the reports, as it is not every day that the nation is able to see the national police commissioner being cross-examined by such a prominent lawyer. That is to say, even if the events were not centred on the Marikana inquiry, this exchange would have still received prominent coverage because of the personalities involved, and hence the *ethos* proof came into play in how this story was covered. There were also two reports that employed *pathos* proof, as they highlighted the emotions of those who had lost loved ones in Marikana. The first was on March 14, 2013, when one of the deceased miners' wives broke down at the inquiry while Phiyega was on the stand, and the second was on March 20, 2013, when the commission, including family members of the deceased, visited the site where the deaths had occurred. On both of these occasions, there was focus on visuals of people crying and in distress, and reference to the fact that "tears flowed". While the coverage on these days still focused on proceedings, the emphasis was on how those in attendance had been moved emotionally by what had happened, and as a result this had a bearing on how viewers interpreted the coverage.

5.10.3 Does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

The journalist's assertion of the "heated exchanges" between Phiyega and legal councils representing the miners was not only verified in snippets of what the respective parties had to say, but it was also captured well through the way that the visuals were filmed and edited. Sometimes a lawyer would be asking Phiyega a question, but the camera would be fixed on her face using a medium to close-up shot that vividly showed her emotion as she contemplated her response. These images were perhaps as telling as the words she used when replying, and so one could easily believe the journalist when her script described the

cross examination as “gruelling” because the script was accompanied by appropriate images to back this up. The manner in which the shots were edited, cutting from the lawyer to Phiyega then back to the lawyer again, as the verbal exchange ensued, captured the sense that the parties were disagreeing vehemently, expressing strong emotions. By doing this, the report came across as credible because it gave both sides adequate coverage and its coverage accurately depicted the manner in which the exchange unfolded. On the other hand, the setup of the SABC’s coverage of the Marikana Commission of Inquiry mirrors the notion of an ‘us versus them’ view that is espoused by some members of society towards the South African Police Service. The coverage occurred in the context of other stories related to police brutality, including the death of Ficksburg protestor Andries Tatane at the hands of the police, and in a way over-emphasised this adversarial tone in order to make the news report more compelling. This compelling viewing came at a cost, however, because it raised questions about whether relations between the police and the rest of society were really as hostile as the coverage was making them out to be. These questions in turn brought the credibility of this approach to reporting under scrutiny, portraying the SABC as lacking credibility because of over-emphasising something that was not based on proper research, namely whether society really has a negative perception of the police, or whether these hostilities are just a creation of the media.

An area of this story that the public broadcaster’s coverage fared well, was in allowing considerable portions of the footage obtained from the commission to run without the journalist’s interjections or interpretation. Viewers were able to hear lengthy segments of questions and answers, and even though the ones that were broadcast may have been specifically selected because they were the most dramatic, they gave viewers a credible sense of the robust engagement that unfolded at the commission. This is very important in light of the significance of the Marikana massacre in democratic South Africa. The SABC does this well in these reports, and as such, in this respect its coverage of this story comes across as being credible.

5.11 Nelson Mandela Hospitalised

5.11.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

The health condition of former President Nelson Mandela was a very topical issue in 2013. He spent several days in hospital on a number of occasions that year, fuelling speculation that his health was deteriorating rapidly. There were a number of instances where rumours spread uncontrollably, as government refused to give comprehensive briefings to address these. The time period under consideration saw two instances when the statesman was hospitalised. The first was on the March 9, 2013, when he was taken in for a routine check-up, and was discharged the following day. The second was when he was re-admitted on the March 28, 2013, and spent 10 days under observation due to a recurring lung infection. He was discharged on April 6, 2013.

5.11.2 SABC Coverage of this story

Bearing in mind Nelson Mandela's age, and the previous lapses in communication from government about his health, any news about a stay in hospital did not merely make national headlines, it made international headlines (SAPA, 2013). The SABC covered the story every day for the duration of his hospital stay over the time period under consideration. Coverage included regular updates from the presidency about his health, well-wishes from South Africans who visited sites that are closely associated with him, prayer services held in his honour, as well messages of appreciation from the Mandela family. The exigence on which coverage of this story was based was the ill health of South Africa's first democratically elected president, and the country's most renowned citizen. The relatively prolonged hospital stay by the elderly statesman, left people concerned that he would not make it out of hospital alive. Prior to the ten day stay in hospital, Mandela had spent a few days under observation, but the Presidency had not been transparent with the media and South African public, and rumours began circulating, including that Mandela had in fact passed away. In this particular instance, there appeared to have been a better flow of information between the South African government and the media, and as such the focus of the coverage was primarily on the well wishes from South Africans, as opposed to the latest developments or government's communication failures.

Coverage of the reports on this story were pegged on the news values of negativity - the statesman's ill health; timeliness - he was in hospital at the time when the reports were aired; prominence - Nelson Mandela was South Africa's most renowned citizen; impact - people

were already speculating about what his death would mean for South Africa; and superlativeness, the mass prayer meetings that were held on his behalf. The reports made reference to his previous hospital stays constantly, highlighting the emotion and uncertainty that characterised that time. They also featured *vox pops* from a range of people - young, old, black, white, locals and foreigners - and with every report filed, new interviews were used. Further, almost every single report included a statement or interview from the presidency about how the former president was doing. There were also some interviews done with interesting people who had met Mandela at some stage of his public life. In terms of visuals, the reports drew very strongly on archived footage of Mandela during some of the iconic moments of his public life, such as when he was driven onto the soccer pitch during the 2010 World Cup opening ceremony. They also included shots of a number of iconic locations that are associated with him, such as Robben Island, the Naval Hill Nelson Mandela Statue in Bloemfontein, and his homes in Houghton and Qunu. The dominant communicative frame employed in the reports was the collective interest frame where the media “visualize shared, communal or collective interest through identifying a common interest” (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 343), in this case, the topic of that ‘collective interest’ was the health of the former president. The reports also employed the classical reporting framing, by giving updates on Mandela’s health, but this reporting frame was used alongside other frames such as the contention frame which “involves a plurality of voices and perspective, which may not necessarily have opposing views” (Cottle & Rai, 2008: 343), and in this story included views from well-wishers, family members, and the government.

Although not appearing to be the case at first glance, the reporting on this news story primarily employed the deliberative genre of rhetoric. The interviews and *vox pops* all focused on his health and on extending well wishes to Mandela. When these are read through a rhetorical lens they can be seen as deliberations in two regards: firstly, on whether he would get better or not, and secondly, what South Africa’s future would be without him. There were some interviews where this sentiment was clearly expressed, and interviewees said outright that they were praying for his recovery because South Africa “still needs him”. However most of them, by simply wishing him a speedy recovery, conveyed the sentiment that they were not yet ready to deal with a future without Mandela.

There was also a sense of the epideictic genre that came through in the reports filed from some of the iconic sites associated with Mandela, such as Robben Island, as well as one of

the homes that once housed him while he was on the run from the apartheid government. Although the reports filed from these sites were not about events related to his ill health, they received coverage because they transported viewers back to significant occasions and addresses that occurred at those sites; the focus was on what those iconic moments had meant for South Africa. These reports ‘performed’ Mandela’s legacy, transporting viewers back to some milestones in his life, and consequently the ‘life’ of South Africa’s democratic dispensation. These places also communicated the values best associated with Mandela, such as forgiveness, reconciliation and endurance, and thus even without directly referring to these in her script; the reporter clearly communicates the calibre of the person for whose recovery South Africans were praying.

The reports used the *pathos* proof, drawing on the heightened emotions that were being experienced by South Africans as Mandela’s stay in hospital grew longer. The inclusion of people from different backgrounds, ages, races and locations, gave the story national appeal and rallied South Africans to ‘pray’ for the elderly statesman. Reports that included messages from family members who thanked South Africans for their prayers and support added to this, as they gave the impression that every prayer and wish for good health mattered, and was acknowledged. Overarching the reports, and probably the primary reason that most of the reports were headline stories, was the fact that the story was about Nelson Mandela, and as such the reporting also drew on the *ethos* proof because it was based on his charismatic personality. This was predominantly conveyed through the use of archived visuals of Mandela during some his most memorable public appearances.

5.11.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

Most of the coverage around Nelson Mandela’s stay in hospital, focused on statements from the presidency and well wishes from South Africans. The regular updates from Presidential Spokesperson, Mac Maharaj, provided the ‘facts’ around the story, while the sentiments from citizens gave the stories ‘heart’. As ordinary people went to lay flowers outside his home in Houghton, or gathered at various church services to pray for his recovery, an impression was created that the nation was waiting with bated breath, and hoping anxiously for his recovery. The inclusion of a variety of voices in the coverage demonstrated that there was a concerted

effort by the SABC to show that Mandela's health was of concern to South Africans from all parts of society, and even beyond the country, with well wishes from the African Union also reflected in the coverage on March 31, 2013. The variety of voices used in the coverage of this story, coupled with the fact that new interviews and *vox pops* were featured every single day during his hospitalisation, gave the broadcaster's reports about the public's reaction credibility. The variety of voices also probably arose from the fact that this story was covered daily, and as a result reporters had to be creative in the angles that they used. This was not a 'developing' story, with a constant change in facts, but it was a story based on the wellbeing of South Africa's iconic leader, and one that the public was constantly talking about. The SABC succeeded in its endeavours to file its reports using different and interesting angles.

5.12 Tensions between North Korea and South Korea

5.12.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

Between January and August 2013, tensions between North and South Korea, the United States and Japan escalated, following a United Nations Security Council Resolution that condemned North Korea for launching a rocket. The media dubbed this the "North Korean crisis", and it was marked by threats and counter-threats from the countries involved (MacAskill, 2013).

5.12.2 SABC coverage of this story

Despite having been an on-going story since January, the SABC's coverage of this story, in the period under consideration, only began in April. This came as North Korea said it would restart a nuclear reactor capable of producing plutonium. From April 2, 2013, the story was covered on a daily basis (with the exception of the 3rd of April), including a studio interview with an expert who explained how the events were relevant to South Africa. The exigence that gave rise to the coverage of this story was the fact that tensions between North and South Korea had risen to a level where they became a matter of international concern. The fact that the United Nations and the United States of America came out and made pronouncements on

the matter placed the story on the international news agenda. What was interesting from the SABC's perspective, however, was that even though there was a report that expounded on the relevance of these developments to South Africa, geographically, the situation seemed far removed from locals. In light of this, the news reports were pegged on the news values of negativity - the on-going hostile verbal exchange between the countries; timeliness - each day of reporting brought a new development to the conflict; prominence - the calibre of world leaders who made commentary on the developments; impact - the threat that a war, involving nuclear weapons, could have broken out; and superlativeness - the thousands of soldiers, especially from North Korea, that were filmed conducting drills.

Visually, it is unclear whether the SABC had its own footage of the developments, or whether it obtained these from an international news wire. However, from the repetitive nature of the shots both within and across the five news reports filed between April 2 and April 6, one can deduce that this was in fact file footage obtained from another news source. Further the SABC did not have a reporter in the country, so it is highly unlikely that they would have deployed a lone camera person to film these shots for the broadcaster. In terms of the words used in reporting on this story, even though the journalist's voiceovers dominated reports, there were a considerable number of interviews and sound bites that provided context. These included audio content from a brief clip of a North Korean newsreader which was dubbed into English, two sound bites from an interview with the South Korean Defence Minister, Kim Kwan-Jin, and a *vox pop* from a South Korean worker, US State Department Spokesperson, Victoria Nuland, and the United Nations Secretary-General Ban Ki Moon. The SABC also conducted a live interview at its Johannesburg studios with Tom Wheeler from the South African Institute for International Affairs, who explained the background of the conflict and the relevance of the latest developments to South Africa.

The reports employed the classical communicative frame of reporting more prominently, focusing mainly on the latest developments in the story. There were endeavours to juxtapose the information coming from North Korea with views from the South, as is seen on the report filed on April 4, 2013, using the contention reporting frame. However, where reports were filed about America's views about the crisis, as was the case on April 5, these were not countered with an opposing voice. The live in-studio interview with Wheeler may have been an attempt to also employ the investigative communicative frame, because through it, the

anchor sought to get clarity on a number of issues and to expound on the underlying reasons for the crisis. This, however, fell short of the traditional investigative reporting frame which is “a highly performative communicative frame which involves journalists going out to investigate, expose and uncover information that would not otherwise be in the public domain” (Cottle & Rai, 2008, 343).

The genre of rhetoric employed in the coverage was deliberative, as both North and South Korea threatened and counter-threatened each other. There was no certainty as to whether any of the sides would act on these threats, but the reports highlighted the fact that were either side to act, there would be dire consequences globally, particularly because there was a nuclear weapon involved. The coverage also drew on the judicial genre of rhetoric, as the reports endeavoured to expound on what had led to the escalating tensions and who was to blame, however it seems as though these were taken at face value, and no real attempt was made to explain the underlying causes. The rhetorical proofs most prevalently employed were the *pathos* and *logos* proofs. The *pathos* proof came across in the emotively heightened language that was used to explain the latest developments such as when the reporter stated that “the crisis over North Korea has gone too far”, “South Korea says it will not rule out military action”, and “North Korea steps up its threat of a nuclear attack”. The intensity of the situation further came through in the striking visuals of the North Korean army performing drills, with rows and rows of soldiers all moving in unison, offering a visual depiction of the strength of the North Korean army. These visuals drove home the scale of the ‘pending’ war, as the viewer was confronted with the figures and militancy of those that would be involved. The *logos* proof was employed to explain what the latest developments were, and who was saying what, and to whom. Of the reports filed, the studio interview with Tom Wheeler provided the best case in point of how the news endeavoured to explain these developments ‘logically’.

5.12.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

As has been discussed above, the SABC most likely obtained its content for the news reports filed on this story from an international news wire. Given the propaganda that surrounded the North and South Korean crisis, the source of this news would have a significant impact on how the developments were reported on and understood in the South African context. And

this in turn would have a bearing on how credible the public broadcaster was deemed to have been in its reports filed on this story. As such, even though there was very little evidence of the SABC taking any particular side in relation to the stand-off between North Korea and South Korea, because it relied on a foreign news agency for its content, there was a slant that focused markedly on the countries and international bodies that were speaking out in condemnation of the North's actions. There was only one 'voice' from the North Korean perspective, and it was that of a North Korean newsreader who issued a warning to the United States, that it "will be smashed by the strong will of the united service personnel and people". The absence of a North Korean perspective can perhaps be attributed to the strict control of the flow of information in that country. In 2013, Reporters Without Borders ranked its media environment 178th out of 179 countries (Reporters Without Borders, 2013). But the strong focus on what the South Korean allies were saying did slant the coverage somewhat impacting the public broadcaster's credibility.

The interview with Tom Wheeler from the South African Institute of International Affairs, conducted on April 4, 2013, provided an interesting perspective because it shed light on how these developments were relevant to South Africa. Covering this international story in this way was very useful because local media often covers these global stories without helping the citizenry interpret the impact these stories have on their lives. Over and above its role of informing the nation, as has been discussed above, the SABC has a responsibility to educate, and its coverage of this story in this way achieved that. It would be very useful to see more of this kind of coverage for big international stories that do not appear to immediately have relevance for ordinary South Africans.

5.13 Oscar Pistorius Murder Trial

5.13.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

On February 14, 2013, world-renowned Paralympian, Oscar Pistorius, shot and killed his girlfriend, Reeve Steenkamp at his home in Pretoria. The circumstances surrounding the incident were the subject of a much publicised trial, with local and international media packing out the courtroom where the trial was held, and proceedings being televised live (Kaplan, 2014). In the period under consideration, the trial had not yet started, but reporting

was already taking place. The stories covered included a civil claim that was apparently going to be launched by Reeve Steenkamp's family against Pistorius; the easing of some of Pistorius's bail conditions; the appearance of Pistorius's brother, Carl, in court on other unrelated charges; and Pistorius resuming his training. The murder trial started on March 3, 2014, and the media coverage around it was unprecedented for a court case in South Africa. In a move that is not very common in the country's legal system, the media was allowed to film court proceedings and air them live, within strict guidelines. The 'live' nature of the coverage brought a new dynamic to the reporting because instead of relying on reporters to sum up what had happened in court, due to not being privy to the proceedings, viewers could watch and listen for themselves, and the role of the reporters covering the case became primarily that of contextualisation and interpretation of complex legal principles.

5.13.2 SABC coverage of this story

As stated, the coverage around this story during between March 8, 2013 and April 7, 2013, was quite substantial given the fact that the trial had not even started. The SABC, like other media houses, gave this story prominence, especially on the days that Pistorius was due to appear in court concerning his bail conditions. The exigence that gave rise to the coverage of this story was the fact that a beloved South African sporting icon, Oscar Pistorius, faced murder charges after he allegedly shot and killed his girlfriend. Because the trial had not yet commenced, the reporting was focused on other developments around the case. As such the news reports filed in relation to this story were pegged on the news values of negativity - Reeve Steenkamp had been shot and killed; prominence - Oscar Pistorius is a world renowned sports star; timeliness - aspects of the case were being heard, while others were being investigated; and novelty - Pistorius had been a darling of the local and international media, and his fall from grace in this way was unexpected. A noteworthy aspect around the coverage was that even though the story was about Oscar Pistorius's murder trial, reports were filed about developments involving his brother, Carl Pistorius, as well as Pistorius's activities outside the case, such as when he resumed training. Ordinarily these developments would not have been featured in the news, let alone made headlines, but because of the media frenzy that developed around this particular case, and specifically Oscar Pistorius's life, these types of incidents were deemed to be newsworthy.

Visually, the story featured footage from inside court, except for the story that was included in the sports section of the bulletin, which focused on Pistorius training on a track field. The footage tended to be close-up shots, and it depicted an emotional Pistorius, or his family members. In the story that expounded on his appeal against some of his bail conditions, the reporting was accompanied by a graphic, which included text in the form of bullet points, elaborating on these. This story also featured archived footage of Reeve Steenkamp as a contestant in a reality TV show. The footage was used in an aspect of the news report that related to the fact that the show had aired the night before. Even though this was included as part of the news report on Pistorius' bail, there was no direct link between this and the bail conditions.

For most of the reporting on this story, the classical reporting frame was used, with the journalist primarily giving information on the latest developments in the case. On March 28, 2013, when the judge ruled that Pistorius' bail conditions could be relaxed, footage of the judge delivering the judgment was included in the package, adding a different voice. Further, a sound bite was obtained from the NPA about significant developments, including the relaxing of the bail conditions. A few days prior to the decision, on March 9, 2013, a more comprehensive report was filed featuring an interview with a legal expert, and providing a detailed context to the bail conditions and which ones Pistorius was appealing against. On April 4, 2013, SABC conducted an interview with Oscar's trainer, Peet van Zyl, after van Zyl made an announcement that Oscar has resumed his training. The interview featured rare footage of the athlete that was not related to his court case, something that had not occurred since he killed his girlfriend. This report was aired in the sports section of the news bulletin.

As has been stated above, the reports filed in relation to this story were not necessarily centred on a particular event or occurrence; rather they were centred on a personality, and thus they used different genres of rhetoric. The reports of Pistorius's bail application primarily employed the deliberative genre, as they sought to expound on what would happen if Pistorius were to be granted the concessions he had applied for. Because these reports did not really focus on his guilt or innocence, as far as the murder of his girlfriend was concerned, they did not make use of the judicial genre, as is usually the case for court related stories. The aspects of the report that focused on the Steenkamp family's possible civil claim blamed Pistorius for the fate that had befallen Reeve. The judicial genre was used in these reports because their objective was to persuade on his 'guilt'. The report filed on the fact that

Pistorius had resumed training had a measure of both deliberative and epideictic rhetoric. The deliberative rhetoric came through in his agent, Peet van Zyl's assertions that Pistorius's future was uncertain at that stage, demonstrating that the pair was still contemplating a way forward. The epideictic rhetoric was evident in the fact that this particular training session became an occasion for the South African media, as Pistorius had not been seen training since his girlfriend's death. The local media devoted the type of coverage that it normally does for a high profile event staged to portray something or someone in this case, in a positive light. Even though no speech is made, the footage of Pistorius as the "devoted athlete" who would not allow any situation to keep him down, spoke volumes, and perhaps made an even stronger case of praising him than any address that could have been made in this regard.

Because the reports filed around this story touched on a variety of themes, with Oscar Pistorius as the sole link, it would be fitting to say that the proof most predominantly drawn on in covering this story was *ethos*, centred on the character and personality of Oscar Pistorius. The report on his brother, Carl's court appearance, for example, would not have made news had he not been a relative of Oscar Pistorius. Further, the training also would not have made it into the news if it had been any other sportsman at the time. The reports were thus filed with the intention of being persuasive about an image of Oscar Pistorius that the media has begun fashioning since he killed Reeve Steenkamp. The reports that were filed concerning his bail application employed the *logos* proof, as they gave the legal reasoning behind such an application. These reports outlined Pistorius's reasons for applying for the concessions logically, and they also expounded on the judge's reasons for agreeing with Pistorius. The manner in which these reports were filed was somewhat educational. They included info-graphics that provided visual representations of the complex legal concepts that were being deliberated over.

5.13.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

With the world's attention on the South African justice system and the local media's reporting on this story, the SABC's approach of employing the classical reporting frame assisted the broadcaster in ensuring that, unlike other media houses which attempted to 'break' developments, but ended up getting them wrong, the public broadcaster's reporting on the Oscar Pistorius case was always accurate. The reporters simply stuck to reporting on

information that was confirmed by named officials and sources, and during court proceedings they stuck to reporting on what was said. In this sense, therefore, the public broadcaster came across as a credible source of news because unlike other media sources, it never had to explain any premature reports that ended up being untrue or incorrect. However, this cautious approach also meant that it was not at the forefront of breaking news about the trial. Due to the fact that the case was broadcast live, viewers could watch proceedings for themselves, thus in covering this story, media houses set themselves apart through the quality of analysis and contextualisation of the developments, not necessarily in recapping what had unfolded in court. A broadcaster like the SABC, which chose to play it safe, lost out on gaining a reputation as the 'leader' in its coverage of this story. In this regard therefore, the public broadcaster's credibility was threatened. The SABC relied primarily on interviews with the NPA, and did not feature many other voices to unpack the developments in and out of court, other than legal expert, Professor Pierre de Vos, to expound on Pistorius's bail conditions. Granted, there is often a very limited number of people one can interview when covering an on-going court case, but there are always experts that can shed light on legal issues, if not the case itself. The fact that the view of only one legal expert was brought in to give clarity on Pistorius's bail conditions was a missed opportunity. The law is mainly about interpretation, and in this case, where proceedings were aired live, viewers no longer primarily depended on media houses to be their 'eyes and ears', but they did need the media to help them make sense of what was going on and why. Thus, bringing in more views from legal experts would have been an opportunity not only to develop the story, but to also educate the South African public about the laws surrounding bail. Further, outside the court where the case was being heard, there were various individuals and groups either with a vested interest in the trial or who were just curious who could. They have been interviewed about their perceptions. Thus, in the time period under consideration, the SABC failed to be persuasive that its coverage of this particular news story was credible, not on the grounds of inaccuracy, but rather on how far it was willing to go as the public broadcaster, to use a story such as this to educate the public about the law.

5.14 Changes in the Price of Fuel

5.13.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

Every month the National Energy Regulator of South Africa announces changes to the price of petrol, diesel, paraffin and gas, depending on a number of factors. In the time period under consideration there was one announcement about a change in the price of fuel.

5.14.2 SABC coverage of this story

The change in the price of fuel happens every single month, and depending on how the story is framed, it can either be reserved for the economics section of the news bulletin, or it can be placed in the main news section, and sometimes it can even be the top headline story. In the time period under consideration, the SABC 3 English bulletin featured this story as a report in the economics section of the bulletin, and focused on how the latest price change would affect small business owners who made use of paraffin and gas as a key part of their businesses.

The exigence that gave rise to the coverage of this story was the pending change in the price of fuel. The story was focused on how the changes would affect ordinary people, particularly those who owned small businesses that depended on fuel such as paraffin and gas for their operations. The coverage of this story was pegged on the news values of timeliness - the changes came into effect “from midnight tonight”; and impact - the manner in which the change would impact small businesses that use paraffin and gas (Bednarek & Caple, 2012: 41). The predominant communicative frame employed for this story was the contention frame where the insights from various affected parties were reflected (Cottle & Rai, 2008). There were also elements of the reportage and personalisation frames, as the coverage included profiling how specific individuals would be affected. A wide range of visuals were used, including shots of the small business owners making use of fuel in their daily lives, petrol attendants filling up cars with fuel, shots of items that use fuel, such as stoves and paraffin heaters, and various shots from petrol garages. The visuals combined general shots of places and people, with personalised shots of the business owners which the report profiled.

The rhetorical genre employed in the coverage of this story was deliberative, as the news report painted an uncertain, and even bleak, future for these businesses. The owners deliberated on the fact that the rising costs were becoming unaffordable, while the economist

who was included in the report, gave a broader view of how the pending changes would affect the local economy as a whole. Obviously in both these cases the insights are based on a prediction of what is to come, and hence the report is filed from a deliberative perspective. The report also employed the epideictic genre, as the coverage deliberated over the “occasion” of the change in fuel price. Central to the coverage was a need to address the fact that a change in the fuel price should not jeopardise the economic situation of people who already find it hard to afford the basic necessities. The report used the epideictic genre to argue that irrespective of the ‘logical’ reasons behind the price changes, the change is contrary to the values of South Africa as a developmental state, which prioritises the improvement of the economic plight of the previously disadvantaged.

Because the report appealed to the emotions of the viewer by having struggling business owners as the central “characters”, it employed the *ethos* proof. There were aspects that drew on the *logos* proof, as it sought to give a logical explanation of the factors that had given rise to the changes in fuel costs through the interview given by the economist. The *pathos* proof was used as well, as the individuals featured as case studies in this report gave emotional accounts of how the price changes were going to affect them. However, the most persuasive aspect of the story was the fact that it evoked sympathy and empathy from the viewer because the pending changes would adversely affect the poor.

5.14.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

Given that the price of fuel changes almost every single month, there is a need for broadcasters to find creative and different ways of reporting on this recurring story. At the centre of the coverage is usually how the latest increase or decrease will affect motorists or consumers. Primary consideration is usually given to the petrol price, but in the report filed by the SABC during the time period under consideration, the paraffin and gas prices, which tend to have the greatest impact on the poor, were the focus of the coverage. Thus the voices that were included in the report did not provide the typical middle-class perspective of fuel price changes. They were perspectives from small-business owners operating in some of the townships in Gauteng. The coverage included going into the homes of these business owners to document the already dire conditions they lived in, and then reporting on how the pending price changes were going to impact them. Later on in the story, the perspective of these

business owners was interpreted by an economist who was given considerably more time to give his assessment than the people on whom this story was based, thus rhetorically conferring greater importance to what he had to say than to what the actual case studies of the report had to say.

In its approach to reporting on this story, the SABC managed to persuade viewers that its version was credible by featuring a range of voices, and by providing case studies that went beyond merely discussing figures and percentages, and instead highlighted the implications that the changes in fuel prices would have on ordinary people. Further, the story attempted to be educational by employing the *logos* proof through soliciting the views of an expert on why these fuel price changes occur, and providing a ‘reasoned argument’ on why these increases had happened. For middle-class people, who may have had exposure to economics studies, these factors may seem obvious, but for the majority of the poorly educated in South Africa, reports such as this are often the primary way in which they receive an education about the factors behind fuel price changes. It is thus worthwhile for the public broadcaster to continue to adopt this educational approach when dealing with the changes in the fuel price because its coverage comes across as being credible.

5.15 Election of Pope Francis

5.15.1 Background and developments in the time period under consideration

Following the resignation of Pope Benedict the sixteenth, on February 28, 2013, the Vatican had to elect a new pope. Pope Francis, born Jorge Mario Bergoglio, was elected the successor on March 13, 2013. In the time period under consideration, the process to elect the new pope had started, and it concluded with the election of Pope Francis. Also, during this time Pope Francis made a number of public appearances which received widespread media coverage; as the world sought to gain a better understand of how different the Vatican would be under his papacy. These appearances included a media address and Francis’s first mass as the pope.

5.15.2 SABC coverage of this story

In a similar way to the reports filed on Chavez's death, the exigence for the news reports filed on the election of the new pope was the globally significant occasion of his election, as well as the ceremony that surrounded his appointment. The coverage attempted to give the story local relevance by featuring a report based on the insights of a South African cardinal and a South African catholic worshipper. This story was pegged on the news value of timeliness - the election of a new pope; proximity - the fact that there are around 1.2 billion Catholics around the world, including a sizable number in South Africa, and the importance of this occasion for them (Glatz, 2014); prominence - the person elected would be the head of one of the biggest organisations in the world; impact - the policies and views of the person elected would have a far-reaching impact; and novelty - the election of a new pope. The combination of all of these factors made this an important story, and it was evident in the prominent coverage that it received, as it was covered on an almost daily basis between the 11th and 17th of March 2013.

A variety of communicative frames were employed in the news reports on Pope Francis. There were reports that employed the classic reporting frame, providing information on the latest developments (Cottle & Rai, 2008), particularly when the process to elect the new pope was under way, for example the stories on March 11th and 12th 2013. There was also coverage that employed the collective interest frame where the stories sought to elaborate on some of the issues under consideration during the election, such as the lack of representation of females and minorities. Once the new pope was elected, the stories sought to give viewers insights into who Pope Francis was. This coverage highlighted Pope Francis's nationality, how his election was received around the world, and his stance on some topical issues such as poverty, and the church's relevance in modern society. It also featured coverage of the pope's stance on the developments in the Central African Republic. The reports were very rich visually; there was footage of a number of symbolic sites and rituals, such as the smoke that indicated whether a new pope had been elected or not. There was footage from inside and outside the Vatican, and ample footage of huge crowds waiting outside the Vatican expectantly as the election process was underway, and descending on the various locations which Pope Francis visited once he had been elected.

The story filed on March 14, 2013, a day after Pope Francis's election, sought to establish local relevance by featuring the views of a local cardinal, George Bargogio, and a member of the Catholic Church who lives in Johannesburg. This report included aspects of the

international celebrations following the election, but it focused on how Francis's election had been received in South Africa, albeit only two people who were interviewed. The reports filed after the election came across as being favourable of the choice of having Pope Francis at the helm. The report filed on March 16, 2013, for example, was headlined "Pro-poor Pope", and referred to his interactions with the media as "laughing and joking". This report also talked about Pope Francis wanting to "introduce a different style to the papacy", highlighting the fact that "on the night of his election he shunned the papal limousine and joined other cardinals on a bus". The report filed about him on the second day of his tenure was equally glowing, highlighting how the pope "humbly thanked everyone" and described his "outgoing nature and sense of humour" as differing "notably from the much more formal Benedict". A report filed two days later on March 19, 2013 was equally favourable, and talked about how Pope Francis favoured "humility and simplicity over pomp and grandeur". It is worth noting that as significant as the story was internationally, the SABC does not appear to have sent a team to cover it, but relied on footage and content from an international news wire service. The only story that was filed by a local reporter was on March 14, 2013, which has been described above.

The genre that was used the most in these news reports was epideictic, as the occasion of the election of the new pope took centre stage. The reporting began with the ceremonies that preceded the actual election and announcement, and gave details of the significance of some of these. On the day when the pope was eventually elected, and a few days after that, the coverage focused on his interactions with people, and highlighted what the papacy was expected to look like during his tenure. This latter aspect of the coverage employed the deliberative genre, as the reporter noted that under him, the Vatican was expected to be in support of poor people. There was obviously no proof of that at that particular stage, and thus it was a deliberation of what was to come. Through the use of this genre, the coverage "demonstrated" the importance of the Catholic Church, by reporting on this story almost daily, and through the fact that it was deemed to be a headline story. The focus on the pope's comings and goings after his election positioned him in the mind of the viewer as someone important, and whom they should know, and in this way, the reports celebrated the "value" of having him at the helm of one of the largest global entities. In terms of the proofs employed, the dominant one was the *pathos* proof, as emotions, in the run-up, during, and after the election of the pope, were the main focus of the reports. These were emotions from ordinary Catholics, and after he had been elected these included emotions from prominent people such

as Zimbabwean President, Robert Mugabe, who had met with the pope and received a blessing from him on March 19, 2013. The reports also drew on the *ethos* proof, in that they highlighted the pope's character, describing him as "humble", "pro-poor" and "approachable". These reports painted him in a positive light, in anticipation of what the papacy would be like now that he had been placed at the helm.

5.15.3 In what ways does the SABC succeed and/or fail in persuading viewers that its version of this story is credible?

The issue of the papacy is not clear-cut and comes with some controversy. In its coverage, the SABC did not devote sufficient time to highlighting, let alone discussing these. Barring the brief report on a women's group that staged a protest over the lack of female representatives standing for election, there was no coverage of any controversy that arose during this time. As shown above, the reporting was extremely glowing of the pope, and there did not appear to have been any attempt to interrogate whether everyone was as positive towards Pope Francis's elections as the news reports suggested. Perhaps the heavy reliance on content from international news wires led to this bias. However, even if it had to draw on international news reports for its coverage, the SABC should have had at least one report that highlighted and discussed the controversies around this story. This bias in favour of the new pope, and the process of his election, was very evident because of the obvious lack of voices that critiqued the developments in this story, and this made the SABC's coverage less credible as a result.

The report filed on how Francis's election was received locally provided a good opportunity for the public broadcaster to expound on the relevance of these developments to South Africans. Granted, only the views of two people were solicited, however, the manner in which these views were reported on, namely using a case-study approach that clearly showed that those were the views of two individuals, who did not claim to be speaking for the broader body of South African Catholics, ensured that viewers understood that these were personal perspectives. This report, particularly the interviews and the shots that accompanied it, really gave a personalised sense of how the two people featured felt the election of the new pope would impact their lives. In this way, the SABC was able to educate, as well as somewhat

entertain, and in this regard succeeded as coming across as a credible source of news on this particular story.

The other aspect of the news reports around the pope, where the broadcaster's coverage came across as credible, is in the inclusion and explanation of a number of the symbols and rituals that surround this occasion. The SABC used the opportunity presented by the election of a new pope to educate viewers on the Vatican, arguably one of the most important and influential international institutions. The broadcaster gave a detailed explanation of how voting would proceed, it provided comprehensive profiles of some of the leading candidates, and its footage also included shots from inside the building, depicting what was happening within. By doing this, it positioned itself as a credible authority on this story through providing regular updates on developments. This positioning is important to note because, rhetorically, a news agency's ability to have its hand on the latest developments is critical to communicating credibility – namely that the public that chooses to watch a particularly newscast will be informed about the most topical and most important issues of the day.

6. CONCLUSIONS

This dissertation has shown that by virtue of being a text that endeavours to persuade audiences, television is indeed a medium that can be analysed rhetorically. The methods and techniques employed in television news reporting, in order to make rhetorically sound persuasions were approached in two ways. Firstly, it has shown how the critical concepts of the discipline of rhetoric, such as Aristotle's rhetorical proofs, genres and modes, as well as Bitzer's notion of a rhetorical situation, can be observed in television news reporting. Secondly, it has demonstrated how these concepts can be applied by performing a textual analysis and using this to show how the discipline of rhetoric can be used together with media studies concepts to read television news reports as rhetorical texts. The analysis was performed on 15 news stories aired between March 8, 2013 and April 7, 2013 as reported by the SABC.

The purpose of this dissertation has been twofold. Firstly, this dissertation has set out to add to the existing body of work that looks at the medium of television, and in particular the genre of television news, as rhetorical texts. In the literature review section it was noted that the body of research that combines television news studies and rhetoric is still very small, and given that both of these areas play an important role in how citizens understand the world around them, it is important to add to this, especially in the South African context. The second motivation was to add to the body of work on the South African Broadcasting Corporation, and to expand the analysis of its news reports to include the discipline of rhetoric as a lens. The dissertation endeavoured to critique SABC news reports as texts that set out to persuade audiences that the broadcaster is a credible source of news. Thus, the focus with regard to the news stories was not to determine primarily *what* the SABC was saying about the respective news items, but rather *how* it was saying it, and whether this was persuasive enough for viewers to deem its version of the reports as credible.

With this in mind, the following conclusions have been drawn: firstly there is no all-encompassing way of analysing whether the SABC is generally able to persuade viewers of its credibility or not. The only way to approach the analysis is to look at it story by story, and further examine individual elements within a story. There are stories where the SABC's news reports succeed in employing rhetorical and television news reporting techniques,

making their version of events come across as being credible. There are also instances where the public broadcaster fails to do this. This is to be expected, given that the reports are filed by different journalists who bring their respective abilities and knowledge of persuasion to the reports that they file. An analysis such as the one performed by this dissertation is useful in assisting the SABC to examine where it fares well, and where it needs improvement, and further, through the thorough discussion in the conceptual framework section, it provides a blueprint of what is needed for all news reports to be rhetorically sound.

The second conclusion that this dissertation has reached is that the SABC frequently employs the *pathos* proof in its reports, primarily through the reporters using emotive language in their scripts, even though this is not always accompanied by corresponding footage. Being a visual medium, it is expected that television news would evoke emotions. However, instead of relying primarily on reporters to state and interpret the emotional aspects of the story, the broadcaster should be using its visuals to do this, drawing on the television journalism convention of ‘show, don’t tell’, where visuals are the primary means through which a story is told. What the broadcaster should be doing in its scripts, is to use the *logos* proof more, in order to give sound explanations and make sound arguments for the claims that are made in its reports. As a public broadcaster, the SABC has a mandate to educate, and its news bulletins should be one of the primary means of doing this. Therefore journalists need to script their reports so that they provide more context and background for its stories, and ultimately draw on logic to make a persuasive case that their version of the news stories is credible.

In this regard, the SABC also needs to move away from being a broadcaster that mainly focuses on events, and thus relies heavily on the classical reporting frame. It should rather devote more resources to initiating and investigating stories, and in this way make better use of the reportage and investigative communicative frames. The reason for this has been shown in the analysis, where because the SABC is so focused on ‘the latest developments’, it fails to probe the important aspects of a story as much as it should. The coverage of the CAR debacle, the election of the pope, the De Doorns bus accident and the death of Andries Tatane, are some examples.

Thirdly, in terms of the genres of rhetoric, there is no specific one that is preferable for news reports because this depends on which story is being reported on, and what the focus of the story is. However, there are a number of instances where the public broadcaster should have employed one genre in reporting on a certain story, but instead employed another. In the report on the CAR, for example, the main genre through which that story should have been reported on was judicial – seeking to understand what happened and who was to blame. Instead it took on an epideictic slant, as the focus became on the funerals, and praising the fallen soldiers. Another example is the report on the De Doorns bus crash. The focus should have been on employing the judicial genre of rhetoric to understand why the crash had happened. Instead the epideictic genre was employed, as the reports focused on the mass memorial services and funerals. If the SABC wants to come across as a credible news source, then it needs to use the right genre of rhetoric for the right story in its reporting.

A topic of future research that would be useful to contextualise this dissertation might be a comparative study exploring how SABC 3 news, eNCA and/or perhaps ANN 7 employ the tools of rhetoric in their attempts to persuade viewers that their flagship news bulletins are credible. This type of study would involve performing an analysis such as the one undertaken by this dissertation, and also performing a comparison across the channels. In order for the comparison to be credible, one would need to find a way of obtaining records of the bulletins which are aired at the same time, and then also compare the respective channels' coverage of the same story. Evidently, this would be a tricky exercise to undertake, however in an effort to better understand how the tools of rhetoric are employed in news reporting in South Africa, it would be a study worth exploring. For the purposes of this dissertation, this type of analysis was outside the specified aim of looking solely at how SABC does things.

The first part of the dissertation provided ample discussion of how the tools of rhetoric can be used to make television news reports persuasive. Here it was established that even though the conventions of television news reporting are standard across most broadcasters, each television channel can modify these to make its message more persuasive to its specific audience. The SABC has lost a significant number of viewers from the days when it was the sole television news broadcaster in South Africa. Now that the landscape has grown, and competitors, such as eNCA and ANN7, have come onto the scene, viewers have been leaving the public broadcaster in droves, which suggests that they do not deem its newscasts as credible. In July 2014, daily viewership figures on eNCA were almost ten times that of the

SABC's 24 hour news channel – 19 624 and 2 199 respectively - with the SABC's flagship English news bulletin on SABC 3 drawing an average of 566 913 adult viewers every evening, compared to around 3 million people who watch eNews Prime Time in the same time slot (Ferreira, 2014).

On any given day, these broadcasters will air very similar stories; however, whether viewers choose to tune in or not depends on whether they believe that what they are seeing on these respective channels is credible. It has been shown in this dissertation that the SABC is failing to be persuasive, which would explain why it is struggling to retain viewers. However, as the techniques of rhetoric are relatively easy to apply, given that it is a rigorous discipline with tried and tested techniques, there are opportunities for improvement. The SABC would do well to incorporate some of the recommendations made in this dissertation on how to employ the proofs and genres of rhetoric better, to help it come across as a more credible newscaster. This would hopefully play a role in gaining back the audience share that it has lost over the years because viewers appear to no longer be persuaded by its coverage.

7. REFERENCE LIST

- Abercrombie, N. (1996). *Television and society*. Cambridge: Polity Press.
- Ansell, G. (2005). *Introduction to journalism*. Jacana Media.
- Aristotle. (1994). *Rhetoric*. Translated by Roberts, WR. Online [Available] <http://www.bocc.ubi.pt/pag/Aristotle-rhetoric.pdf> [September 25, 2012]
- Barnett, C. (1998). The contradictions of broadcasting reform in post-apartheid South Africa. *Review of African Political Economy*, 25(78), 551-570. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4006579> [Jan 10, 2014]
- Bell, A. (1991). *The language of news media* (pp. 84-85). Oxford: Blackwell.
- Bednarek, M., & Caple, H. (2012). *News discourse* (Vol. 46). Bloomsbury Publishing.
- Berger, A. A. (2013). *Media analysis techniques*. Sage.
- Bitzer, L. F. (1992). The rhetorical situation. *Philosophy & rhetoric*, 1-14. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40237697> [November 11, 2014]
- Blondheim, M., & Liebes, T. (2009). Television news and the nation: The end?. *The Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, 625(1), 182-195. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40375914> [March 7, 2014]
- Bourdieu, P. (1998). *On television and journalism*, trans. Priscilla Parkhurst Ferguson. The New Press.
- Brandt, W. J. (1970). *The rhetoric of argumentation*. The Bobbs-Merrill company, Inc.
- Burke, K. (1969). *A Rhetoric of Motives*. 1950. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Calhoun, C. J. (Ed.). (1992). *Habermas and the public sphere*. MIT press.
- Caws, M. A. (Ed.). (1986). *Textual analysis: some readers reading*. Modern language association of America.
- Chong, D., & Druckman, J. N. (2007). Framing theory. *Annu. Rev. Polit. Sci.*, 10, 103-126. Online [Available] <http://faculty.wcas.northwestern.edu/~jnd260/pub/Chong%20Druckman%20Annual%20Review%202007.pdf> [June 3, 2014]
- Cicero, O. (1949). trans. HM Hubbell. *Brutus and Orator (London, 1971)*, 371.
- Cockcroft, R. & Cockcroft, S. (2005). *Persuading people: An introduction to rhetoric*. Palgrave Macmillan.

- Cottle, S., & Rai, M. (2006). Between display and deliberation: Analyzing TV news as communicative architecture. *Media, Culture & Society*, 28(2), 163-189. Online [Available] <http://mcs.sagepub.com/content/28/2/163> [March 7, 2014]
- Cottle, S., & Rai, M. (2008). Television news in South Africa: mediating an emerging democracy. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 34(2), 343-358. Online [Available] <http://www.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/03057070802038017> [June 14, 2013]
- Crane, D. (1992). *The production of culture: media and the urban arts* (Vol. 1). Sage Publications.
- Crompton, P. M., & McAlea, R. (2000). Rhetorical devices in television advertising. *Advertising and identity in Europe: the I of the beholder*, 32-41.
- Danesi, M. (2002). *Understanding media semiotics* (p. 253). London: Arnold.
- Deo, M. E., Lee, J. J., Chin, C. B., Milman, N., & Yuen, N. W. (2008). Missing in Action: "Framing" Race on Prime-Time Television. *Social justice*, 145-162. 62 Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/29768493> [March 7, 2014]
- De Wet, P. (2014). 'Nkandla: The Great Unravelling', *Mail & Guardian* 26 March. Online [Available] <http://mg.co.za/article/2014-03-26-nkandla-the-racist-compound> [June 9, 2014]
- Department of International Relations and Cooperations (2011). "Training and Support provided by the South African Army (SANDF) to the Army of the Central African Republic (CAR)". *Department of International Relations and Cooperation*. Retrieved 2013-03-28. Online [Available] <http://www.dfa.gov.za/docs/2011pq/pq78.html> [June 17, 2014]
- Donsbach, W. (2004). Psychology of news decisions factors behind journalists' professional behavior. *Journalism*, 5(2), 131-157. Online [Available] <http://jou.sagepub.com/content/5/2/131.full.pdf+html> [February 14, 2014]
- du Plessis, C. 2013. 'Tatane: So Many Questions Remain' *City Press* 31 March. Online [Available] <http://www.citypress.co.za/news/tatane-so-many-questions-remain/> [June 20, 2014]
- Duncan, J. (2000). Talk left, act right: what constitutes transformation in Southern African media?. Online [Available] <http://ccs.ukzn.ac.za/files/BondTalkLeftWalkRight2ndedn.pdf> [May 19, 2013]
- Duncan, J. (2003). *Public broadcasting in the era of cost recovery: A critique of the South African Broadcasting Corporation's crisis of accountability*. Freedom of Expression Institute.
- Duncan, J. (2008). Executive overstretch: South African broadcasting independence and accountability under Thabo Mbeki. *Communicatio: South African Journal for Communication Theory and Research*, 34(1), 21-52. Online [Available] <http://www.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/02500160802144504> [May 19, 2013]
- Duncan, J., & Seleokane, M. (Eds.). (1998). *Media and democracy in South Africa*. HSRC Press.

- Eldridge, J. (1983). War and peace news on British television. *Current research on peace and violence*, 3-28. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40724950> [March 7, 2014]
- Ferreira, T. (2014). 'TV: Here's the Bad News', *City Press* 24 July. Online [Available] www.citypress.co.za/columnists/heres-bad-news/ [August 10, 2014]
- Fiske, J. (2002). *Television culture*. Routledge.
- Forgette, R., & Morris, J. S. (2006). High-conflict television news and public opinion. *Political Research Quarterly*, 59(3), 447-456. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4148045> [March 7, 2014]
- Friedmann, A. (1994). Sex, lies, and videotape: Sexual innuendo in producing and presenting television news. *Studies in Popular Culture*, 51-59. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/23413731> [March 7, 2014]
- Frosh, P. (2009). The face of television. *The Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, 625(1), 87-102. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40375907> [March 7, 2014]
- Gamson, W. A., & Modigliani, A. (1989). Media discourse and public opinion on nuclear power: A constructionist approach. *American journal of sociology*, 1-37.
- Garnham, N. (1990). *Capitalism and communication: Global culture and the economics of information*. F. Inglis (Ed.). London, Newbury Park, New Delhi: Sage publications.
- Glatz, C. (2014). 'Vatican statistics Report Church Growth Remains Steady Worldwide' *National Catholic Reporter* 2 May. Online [Available] <http://ncronline.org/news/faith-parish/vatican-statistics-report-church-growth-remains-steady-worldwide> [June 20, 2014]
- Gurevitch, M., Coleman, S., & Blumler, J. G. (2009). Political communication—Old and new media relationships. *The ANNALS of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, 625(1), 164-181. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40375913> [March 7, 2014]
- Habermas, J. (1989). *The structural transformation of the public sphere: An inquiry into a category of bourgeois society*. Trans. T burger and F Lawrence, Cambridge: Polity Press
- Hall, S. (1973). The determinations of news photographs. *The manufacture of news: Social problems, deviance and the mass media, communication and society*. Beverly Hills: Sage Publications, 176-190.
- Hallin, D. C. (1997). Sound bite news: Television coverage of elections. *Do the media govern*, 57-65.
- Horton, D., & Wohl, R. R. (1956). Mass communication and para-social interaction: Observations on intimacy at a distance. *Psychiatry*, 19(3), 215-229.

- Iyengar, S. (1987). Television news and citizens' explanations of national affairs. *The American Political Science Review*, 815-831. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/1962678> [March 7, 2014]
- Kadali, R. (2013). The SABC: Run Worse Than a Spaza Shop. *Politicsweb* [Online] Available <http://www.politicsweb.co.za/politicsweb/view/politicsweb/en/page71619?oid=406476&sn=Detail&pid=71619> [August, 9, 2014]
- Kaniss, P. (1993). Assessing the role of local television news in elections: Stimulating involvement or indifference. *Yale Law & Policy Review*, 433-457. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/40239408> [March 7, 2014]
- Kaplan, G. 2014. '24-hour Oscar Pistorius Channel to Launch'. *Eyewitness News* 16 January. Online [Available] <http://ewn.co.za/2014/01/29/24-hour-Oscar-Pistorius-channel-to-launch> [June 10, 2014]
- Katz, E. (1980). Media events: The sense of occasion. Online [Available] http://repository.upenn.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=1271&context=asc_papers&sei-redir=1&referer=http%3A%2F%2Fscholar.google.co.za%2Fscholar%3Fq%3DKatz%252C%2BE.%2B1980.%2BMedia%2BEvents%253A%2BThe%2BSense%2B%26btnG%3D%26hl%3Den%26as_sdt%3D0%252C5#search=%22Katz%2C%20E.%201980.%20Media%20Events%3A%20Sense%22 [June 6, 2014]
- Kumar, A. (1992). Los Angeles riots and television. *Economic and Political Weekly*, 1311-1311. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/4398542> [March 7, 2014]
- Leichter, H. J., Ahmed, D., Barrios, L., Bryce, J., Larsen, E., & Laura, M. (1985). Family contexts of television. *ECTJ*, 33(1), 26-40. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/30220941> [March 7, 2014]
- Lorenzo-Dus, N. (2009). *Television discourse: Analysing language in the media*. Palgrave Macmillan.
- Louw, P. E. (1994). South Africa's television experience of the Barcelona Olympics: the distortion of an international communication event by local civil strife. *Journal of International Communication*, 1(1), 112-128.
- Louw, P. E., & Chitty, N. (2000). A Stage-Managed TV Spectacular?. *The global dynamics of news: studies in international news coverage and news agenda*, (2), 277.
- Louw, P. E. (2011). Introduction: South Africa's multiple languages in a shifting media environment. *Communicatio*, 37(2), 191-193. Online [Available] <http://www.tandfonline.com/doi/abs/10.1080/02500167.2011.604168?journalCode=rcea20#.VL-xrUeUfbA> [June 9, 2014]
- MacAskill, E. (2013). 'US warns North Korea of increased isolation if threats escalate further' *The Guardian* 29 March. Online [Available] <http://www.theguardian.com/world/2013/mar/29/us-condemns-north-korea-threats> [June 9, 2014]

McKee, A. (2003). *Textual analysis: A beginner's guide*. Sage.

Media Monitoring Africa. (2012). *Lack of diversity (Repeat): Analysis of SABC news and programming*. Online [Available] http://www.mediamonitoringafrica.org/images/uploads/SABC_2012_PDF_Whole_small.pdf [April 6, 2013]

Mokone, T., & Kgosana, C. 2012. 'SABC Lock on Nkandlagate'. *Timeslive* 7 November. Online [Available] <http://www.timeslive.co.za/thetimes/2012/11/07/sabc-lock-on-nkandlagate> [June 9, 2014]

Mpofu, A., Manhando, S., & Tomaselli, K. G. (Eds.). (1996). *Public service broadcasting in South Africa: policy directions towards 2000*. Anthropos Publishers.

Nash, W. (1989). *Rhetoric: The wit of persuasion*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Norris, P. (Ed.). (2010). *Public sentinel: News media & governance reform*. World Bank Publications.

Orgeret, K. S. (2008). From his master's voice and back again? Presidential inaugurations and South African television—the post-apartheid experience. *African Affairs*, 107(429), 611-629. Online [Available] <http://afraf.oxfordjournals.org/content/107/429/611.full.pdf+html> [June 23, 2014]

Otto, J. 2013. 'Girl Allegedly Raped for Two Days'. *IOL News* 19 March. Online [Available] <http://www.iol.co.za/news/crime-courts/girl-allegedly-raped-for-two-days-1.1488645#.U6k8IpRWxBk> [June 24, 2014]

Pan, Z., & Kosicki, G. M. (1993). Framing analysis: An approach to news discourse. *Political communication*, 10(1), 55-75. Online [Available] <http://content.ebscohost.com.ezproxy.uct.ac.za/pdf9/pdf/1993/POU/01Jan93/16345003.pdf?T=P&P=AN&K=16345003&S=R&D=ufh&EbscoContent=dGJyMNLr40SeprE4yOvsOLCmr0yep7VSs6%2B4Sa6WxWXS&ContentCustomer=dGJyMPPZ8oTn2LmF39%2FsU%2BPe7Yvy> [June 3, 2014]

Peterson, M., & () مارلېپ يترسون. (2013). The rhetoric of epidemic in India: News coverage of AIDS. *Journal of Comparative Poetics* 18, 237 – 268. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/521888> [March 7, 2014]

Primeau, R. (1979). *The rhetoric of television*. New York: Longman.

Public Protector of South Africa. (2014). *When governance and ethics fail: A report on an investigation into allegations of maladministration, systemic corporate governance deficiencies, abuse of power and the irregular appointment of Mr. Hlaudi Motsoeneng by the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC)*. Online [Available] http://www.pprotect.org/library/investigation_report/2013-14/WHEN%20GOVERNANCE%20FAILS%20REPORT%20EXEC%20SUMMARY.pdf [April 20, 2014]

- Quintilian. (2002). *De Inventione*. Translated by Yonge, CD. Online [Available] www.arts.uwaterloo.ca/~raha/793C_web/deInventione/Bk2.pdf [June 20, 2013]
- Rank, H. (1980). Analyzing political rhetoric. *English Journal*, 38-43. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/816378> [March 7, 2014]
- Rawoot, I., & Underhill, G. (2011). 'Protester's Death Not an Isolated Case'. *Mail and Guardian* 15 April. Online [Available] <http://mg.co.za/article/2011-04-15-protesters-death-not-an-isolated-case/> [June 23, 2014]
- Reporters Without Boarder. (2014). *World press freedom index 2014*. Online [Available] <http://rsf.org/index2014/en-index2014.php> [June 10, 2014]
- SABC. (2004). *SABC editorial policies*. Online [Available] http://www.sabc.co.za/wps/wcm/connect/3bb9fc8044341da1a563e7c4173d8502/Editorialpolicies_rev.pdf?MOD=AJPERES&CONVERT_TO=url&CACHEID=3bb9fc8044341da1a563e7c4173d8502 [Apr 20, 2014]
- SABC. (2013). *Annual report 2013*. Online [Available] <http://www.sabc.co.za/wps/wcm/connect/c7bb99804110db978090b4d93e1dcbd3/SABC+AR+part1.pdf?MOD=AJPERES&CACHEID=c7bb99804110db978090b4d93e1dcbd3> [April 20, 2014]
- SABC. (2014). *Why TV?*. Online [Available] <http://www.sabc.co.za/wps/wcm/connect/f59668004f32f90c977cff3fdb56b4e8/Why+TV+2013-14.pdf?MOD=AJPERES&CACHEID=f59668004f32f90c977cff3fdb56b4e8> [April 20, 2014]
- Salazar, P. J. (2002). *An African Athens: Rhetoric and the shaping of democracy in South Africa*. Routledge.
- SAPA. (2013). 'SABC 3 English News Time Extended'. *IOL News* 30 March. Online [Available] <http://www.iol.co.za/news/south-africa/sabc-3-english-news-time-extended-1.1493742#.U1O5sfmSxQU> [June 8, 2014]
- SAPA. (2013). 'SA Calls for Karabus Release'. *Mail and Guardian* 3 March. Online [Available] <http://mg.co.za/article/2013-03-03-sa-calls-for-karabuss-release> [June 8, 2014]
- SAPA. (2013). 'Media Camp Outside Mandela's Home'. *IOL News* 29 March. Online [Available] http://www.iol.co.za/news/special-features/nelson-mandela/media-camp-outside-mandela-s-home-1.1493614#.U6BR_zmyP8s [June 17, 2014]
- SAPA. (2014). 'DA to Pursue Nkandla Request with Speaker'. *The Citizen* 7 June. Online [Available] <http://citizen.co.za/191931/da-pursue-nkandla-request-speaker/> [June 9, 2014]
- SAPA. (2014). 'Easter Road Death Down 20% from 2013'. *IOL Motoring* 23 April. Online [Available] <http://www.iol.co.za/motoring/industry-news/easter-road-deaths-down-20-from-2013-1.1679321#.U583CTmyP8s> [May 18, 2014]

SAPA-AFP. (2011). 'Police Under Fire After Ficksburg Protester's Death'. *Mail and Guardian* 18 April. Online [Available] <http://mg.co.za/article/2011-04-18-police-under-fire-after-ficksburg>

Scheufele, D. A., & Tewksbury, D. (2007). Framing, agenda setting, and priming: The evolution of three media effects models. *Journal of communication*, 57(1), 9-20. Online [Available] <http://www.davidryfe.com/here/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/scheufele.pdf> [April 19, 2014]

Scott, L. M. (1994). Images in advertising: The need for a theory of visual rhetoric. *Journal of consumer research*, 252-273. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2489819> [March 7, 2014]

Small, W. (1970). To kill a messenger: Television news and the real world.

Smith, K. L., Moriarty, S., Kenney, K., & Barbatsis, G. (Eds.). (2004). *Handbook of visual communication: Theory, methods, and media*. Routledge.

Smith, T. J., & Verrall, D. O. (1985). A critical analysis of Australian television coverage of election opinion polls. *Public Opinion Quarterly*, 49(1), 58-79. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2748931> [March 7, 2014]

Statistics South Africa. (2011). *Census 2011 key results*. Online [Available] http://www.statssa.gov.za/Census2011/Products/Census_2011_Key_results.pdf [February 15, 2014]

Tracey, M. (1998). *The decline and fall of public service broadcasting* (p. 199). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Teer-Tomaselli, R. (1994). Militancy and pragmatism: the genesis of the ANC's media policy. *African Media Review*, 8(2). Online [Available] <http://archive.lib.msu.edu/DMC/African%20Journals/pdfs/africa%20media%20review/vol8no2/jamr008002009.pdf> [June 20, 2014]

Teer-Tomaselli, R. (1995). Moving towards democracy: the South African Broadcasting Corporation and the 1994 election. *Media, Culture & Society*, 17(4), 577-601.

Teer-Tomaselli, R., & Tomaselli, K. (1996). Reconstituting public service broadcasting: media and democracy during transition in South Africa. *Media and Democracy, Oslo: University of Oslo*.

Teer-Tomaselli, R., & Tomaselli, K. (2001). Transformation, nation-building and the South African media, 1993-1999. *Media, democracy and renewal in Southern Africa*, 123-180.

Teer-Tomaselli, R. (2008). National public service broadcasting: Contradictions and dilemmas. *Power, Politics and Identity in South African Media*, éd. préparée par Adrian Hadland, Eric Louw, Simphiwe Sesanti et Herman Wasserman. *South Africa: HSRC Press*, 73-103.

- Thompson, J. B. (1993). The theory of the public sphere. *Theory, culture & society*, 10(3), 173-189.
- Tracey, M. (1998). *The decline and fall of public service broadcasting* (p. 199). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Underhill, G. (2014). 'R2K, SOS Write to SABC Board Over National Key Point 'Threat''. *Main and Guardian* 14 April. Online [Available] <http://mg.co.za/article/2014-04-14-r2k-sos-write-to-sabc-board-over-national-key-point-threat> [May 18, 2014]
- Vecchiatto, P. (2014). 'Icasa to Hold Public Hearings on SABC Blocking of DA Ads'. *Business Day* 15 April. Online [Available] <http://www.bdlive.co.za/national/media/2014/04/15/icasa-to-hold-public-hearings-on-sabc-blocking-of-da-ads>
- Venter, L. (2001). Television news and the public interest. *Ecquid Novi: African Journalism Studies*, 22(2), 196-208. Online [Available] <http://www.tandfonline.com.ezproxy.uct.ac.za/doi/pdf/10.1080/02560054.2001.9665889> [June 20, 2013]
- Vianello, R. (1985). The power politics of "live" television. *Journal of Film and Video*, 26-40. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/20687672> [March 7, 2014]
- Watson, J. (1998). *Media communication*. Macmillan
- White, P. R. (1998). *Telling media tales: The news story as rhetoric* (Doctoral dissertation, University of Sydney). Online [Available] http://www.journalese.org/1_preface_telling-media-theses.pdf [March 7, 2014]
- White, P. R. (2000). Media objectivity and the rhetoric of news story structure. *Language in Performance*, 379-397.
- Whittles, G. (2014). 'SABC Denies Claims of Biased Coverage'. *EWN* 14 April. Online [Available] <http://ewn.co.za/2014/04/14/IFP-latest-party-to-slam-SABC>
- Woal, M. B. (1982). Defamiliarization in television viewing: Aesthetic and rhetorical modes of experiencing television. *The Journal of the University Film and Video Association*, 25-32. Online [Available] <http://www.jstor.org/stable/20686899> [March 7, 2014]
- Wood, L. A., & Kroger, R. O. (2000). *Doing discourse analysis: Methods for studying action in talk and text*. Sage Publications.

8. APPENDICES

8.1 Andries Tatane

08 03 2013

ANCHOR: The defence in the murder trial of Ficksburg protestor, Andries Tatane, today pointed out discrepancies in the statements of state witnesses. It included the exact number of officers identified by one witness. Tatane was beaten and allegedly shot dead by seven police officers during a service delivery protest in April 2011. The Independent Police Investigative Directorate's...

(Visuals from inside court)

ANCHOR: ...Obakeng June...

Free State – Ficksburg

ANCHOR: today refuted claims that public order police officer, Kabelo Morwane and investigators threatened police...

(File with writing)

ANCHOR: into making statements. Morwane confirmed...

(Close up of a woman)

ANCHOR: that he charged four of the accused who are his colleagues...

(Sparsely populated courtroom)

ANCHOR: and says they were near Tatane with other police officers.

(Court official)

ANCHOR: He denied seeing police hit Tatane with batons. He confirmed he saw police holding batons in their hands.

22 03 2013

ANCHOR: The defence team for seven police officers charged with the murder of protestor, Andries Tatane want the charges withdrawn, saying the state has failed to prove its case. A post-mortem confirmed that Tatane died from a gunshot wound to the chest.

(People standing outside an official building – it could be a court or a police station)

Bloemfontein – Ficksburg

JOURNALIST: Earlier this week a state witness conceded to contradicting himself when giving an account of the events on the day that Tatane died.

(Inside court)

JOURNALIST: Another state witness told the court he gave a statement under duress, and was threatened with prison if he refused. Neither of the two witnesses could identify any of the accused in a video of the protest because they were all wearing helmets.

(Focus on three people inside court)

JOURNALIST: Tatane's family have endured a long wait David Nthodi – Tatane's Uncle doing an interview outside court with members of the public behind him: This postponement is creating something in them, you know. This has been going on too long, and really it's not pleasing. We're not happy about it. We wish it comes to an end.

(inside court)

JOURNALIST: The case has been postponed to the 28th of this month.
SOQ

28 03 2013

Headline 1: Tatane: Surprise Court Ruling
(inside court)

ANCHOR: Seven police officers accused of the murder of Ficksburg protestor, Andries Tatane,

(judge delivering judgement)

ANCHOR: acquitted. His family in shock.

(people sitting in court)

(interview with family member done outside court): It's very very painful. I really don't know what to say.

(people in court)

ANCHOR: Good evening. This is the news at 7. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty

ANCHOR: All seven police officers accused of the Andries Tatane murder have been acquitted. The Ficksburg Regional court found the state could not prove its case of murder and assault beyond reasonable doubt. Andries Tatane died during a service delivery protest in April 2011. He was shot at close range. Police used rubber bullets and batons. It was later established two rubber bullets penetrated his chest.

(Scores of protestors out in the street in the township. One carrying a South African flag. Another carrying a homemade placard. They are chanting)

JOURNALIST: It was a service delivery protest that ended with the death...

(Police with guns. A police van nearby. A man is standing a few meters away. Police run towards him)

JOURNALIST: ...of Andries Tatane. The events received wide media attention and sent shockwave throughout the country.

(In court)

JOURNALIST: Now the Ficksburg Regional Court

(Judge sitting in court)

Ficksburg Regional Court

JOURNALIST: found Andries Tatane was not an innocent protestor.

(police in court)

JOURNALIST: That he was violent on the day and obstructed police from their duties.

(legal person going through notes)

JOURNALIST: According to state evidence, the protest also had sinister aims.

(people sitting in court)

JOURNALIST: The ruling surprised many in that courtroom and shocked the Tatane family. David Nthodi – Tatane’s Uncle doing an interview outside court: The family is not happy. I think they will sit down to decide as to what steps they can take because justice has never been fair to us.

(court officials)

JOURNALIST: The NPA says it will study the judgement

Phaladi Shuping – NPA spokesperson doing interview outside court: It’s difficult for us to say now what kind of action will be taken because what will happen is that the prosecutors will first study the judgement, and then make a decision whether the matter is possible to be appealed or not.

(inside court)

JOURNALIST: The seven policemen in the dock left the courtroom quickly after was delivered.

02 04 2013

ANCHOR: calls are mounting for the National Prosecuting Authority to appeal the Andries Tatane murder ruling. Seven policemen were acquitted of the Fiksburg protestor’s murder last week. Magistrate Heyne van Nieker found that the state had not proved its case of murder and assault beyond reasonable doubt. Despite his scathing remarks about the officers involved, the Magistrate noted there was insufficient evidence to make the charges stick. Tatane was shot at close range. Two rubber bullets penetrated his chest.

(people in police uniform walking in front protestors who are carrying banners as they walk down the road)

JOURNALIST: a peaceful protest...

(Banner mid shot with protestors behind is “enough is enough. We want office keys now!!”)

JOURNALIST: decrying the lack of services.

(footage of police clashing with resident)

JOURNALIST: But the mood soon changed.

(footage of Tatane clashing with police, hitting each other)

JOURNALIST: Fiksburg protestor, Andries Tatane, is caught in a scuffle with police.

Moments later he is severely assaulted and shot. He succumbed to his injuries...

(people from the community standing around outside, one them crying)

JOURNALIST: At the time, the NPA believed...

(being wrapped in a body bag)

JOURNALIST: it had a water tight case.

(footage from inside court)

JOURNALIST: Last week the seven police officers charged with his murder and assault walked out of court free men.

(close-up of magistrate sitting at bench)

JOURNALIST: Among the remarks made by the magistrate...

(people sitting in court)

JOURNALIST: that Tatane was not an innocent protester and that he was violent in the day and obstructed police in their duties. In the wake of the ruling, outrage from various quarters.

William Booth doing interview outside: The public out there wants an answer. They want to know the criminal justice system is looking after them and will pursue any complaint vigorously. I think the public also needs to know the evidence needs to be there. You can't convict anybody if there's not evidence. If the witnesses are not reliable.

(inside court)

JOURNALIST: The National Prosecuting Authority will not appeal the outcome. Instead, it's considering charging its witnesses with perjury. This relates to the testimonies of the police officers who allegedly altered their version on the stand.

(close up of a woman who might be family member)

JOURNALIST: For Tatane's family, a possible legal avenue to pursue

William Booth doing interview outside (no label): The family of Mr Tatane, may want to pursue doing the civil side of things where they would sue the minister of police.

(police with guns and community member)

JOURNALIST: The human rights commission is still awaiting the full judgement. It will then decide on whether to take steps.

SOQ

03 04 2013

ANCHOR: The National Prosecuting Authority will not appeal the decision to acquit seven policemen charged with Andries Tatane's murder. Instead, it's pursuing charging them with perjury. Tatane was shot dead in the service delivery protest, in the Eastern Free State nearly two years ago. His family is now considering other legal options.

Pretoria – Today

(People being seated ahead of a briefing. In the background is a banner with government logos)

JOURNALIST: The NPA says it will not appeal.

(people in court)

JOURNALIST: Last week, the Ficksburg regional court acquitted all seven policemen. It said their identification could not be sufficiently confirmed

(judge sitting at the bench)

JOURNALIST: The court found the witnesses gave contradictory testimony.

Adv. Thoko Majwekweni – Acting DPP giving an address during briefing: We've already indicated that we had serious challenges in this case. And they are very apparent in the record itself. So just going on the record is going on the same facts that have been found not to be satisfactorily proven in order to secure a conviction

(woman standing at podium during briefing, while other delegates sit in front and journalists also present)

JOURNALIST: The NPA will, however, open a docket for the investigation of perjury charges against the three witnesses. Tatane's family is emotionally scared.

Seipati Tatane – Sister doing an interview inside an office. Voice over: His death has impacted rather negatively, especially on his family and his children as they solely depend on him

(footage from court – file)

JOURNALIST: The family is weighing its options in the wake of the court's ruling

David Nthodi – family spokesperson doing an interview outside: They're totally not happy about the judgement. It's very, very painful. I really don't know what to say.

(Footage from the protest. Police are present. Protesters are holding up a banner that reads "Enough is Enough. We want office keys NOW!!" – file)

JOURNALIST: The community remains outraged

Black woman does interview outside. Voice over: We are not happy at all. No effort was taken by the prosecution and our hearts are sore

(footage from the protest, someone running around with burning tyre, a large group on the road)

JOURNALIST: for residents, though, the events of that fateful day...

(file footage of police forming a line and group of residents standing)

J...will remain etched in their minds

8.2 Central African Republic

24 03 2013

Headline 1: CAR President Flees

Army official doing an interview outside: Once we have verified all that information and then we'll be able to release a statement to say we have suffered so many casualties

(soldiers walking in street with civilians in one of the African countries)

ANCHOR: SANDF involved in a battle for Bangui at the city falls to rebels

(Army vehicle)

ANCHOR: A very good evening to you. You're watching the news at 7.

ANCHOR: The South African defence force says it cannot confirm reports that at least six South African soldiers have been killed in the Central African republic. An SANDF spokesperson says a base on the outskirts of the capital, Bangui came under attack, and there were casualties on both sides.

(Graphic of central African Republic with label on Bangui and a smaller map of Africa with CAR highlighted in red)

ANCHOR: He says they are still gathering reports from the Central African Republic.

Rebels took the capital today, forcing the country's president, Francois Bozize to neighbouring DRC.

(Soldiers on the side of the road with vehicles, one of which has a South African flag mounted on it. One person in normal clothes)

Central African Republic - Bangui

JOURNALIST: It's reported at least six South African soldiers...

(close up of a soldier)

JOURNALIST: ...are dead. They were all shot in the skirmish...

(soldiers in vehicle on side of road)

JOURNALIST: ...with Seleka Rebels. The SANDF says it's still busy gathering information...

(a house with bullet holes looks abandoned)

JOURNALIST: and can't confirm fatalities.

Brigadier General Xolani Mabanga – SANDF doing interview outside: AT the moment we are still doing battle-field assessment or assessing the situation of what came out. I'm not in a position to say how many people we have lost as well as how many people were injured. But yes, once we have verified all that information we'll be able to release a statement to say to say we have suffered so many casualties

(army truck with soldier peaking out of roof)

JOURNALIST: 400 SANDF soldiers are in the CAR to train local forces...

(mid shot of soldier)

JOURNALIST: ...and protect assets there

Helmoed Heitman – Defence Expert doing an interview in an office with bookshelves in the back: The decision for government is does South Africa stay the course and reinforce the contingent there substantially, fly in the necessary armoured vehicles, make a plan to deploy some aircraft, maybe some Rooi Valke helicopters, whatever, to give the troops the necessary edge over the rebels or do we pack our bags, cover the withdrawal and get out of there.

(Group of people in street walking about)

JOURNALIST: Bangui residents poured into the streets ahead of the rebel advancement this morning.

(two soldiers with guns among the people)

JOURNALIST: hours later, soldiers from the Seleka Rebels Coalition entered the city.

(people standing around a burnt van)

JOURNALIST: Hostilities resumes this week, rebels accusing the president of breaking a January peace agreement

(some ash from what looks like it used to be a housing structure)

JOURNALIST: that would have seen its fighter integrated into the army.

(women with children walking in a rural looking area, carrying loads on their heads)

JOURNALIST: Rebels had also been allocated posts in a power-sharing government.

(people walking about in urban centre)

JOURNALIST: They now want to organise a transition towards democratic election.

(man, perhaps president walking out of plane and interacting with civilians)

JOURNALIST: meanwhile the presidency here, has confirmed that President Bozize met with President Zuma in Pretoria this week. They would not disclose the content of the discussions. It's understood Bozize had requested military assistance to fight off the rebel advance.

25 03 2013

Headline 1: Pretoria's decision questioned

(soldiers standing around on the side of the road in a vehicle)

ANCHOR: 13 South African soldiers killed in the Central African republic

Interview with a white male outside: The presidency was warned last week already that the situation was going to escalate.

(Camera mounted on a vehicle with a gun in front, driving towards a building, some soldiers walking on the side)

ANCHOR: SANDF soldiers to remain in the rebel held country

ANCHOR: A very good evening and welcome to the news at 7. Calls are mounting for the remaining South African soldiers in the Central African Republic to be brought home. But president Jacob Zuma says they will remain in that country. 13 SANDF soldiers were killed when rebels overran the capital on Saturday. One is missing in action; 27 others have been injured. The African Union has suspended the Central African Republic and is imposing sanctions.

(Graphic of a map with label C.A.R, Sudan, DRC, Cameroon.)

JOURNALIST: SANDF troops have been deployed in the former French colony since 2007.
(graphic fades into a 3D map)

JOURNALIST: to assist with training and capacity building.

(3D graphic zooms into Presidential Palace)

JOURNALIST: In January a 400-strong protection team joined them.

(Zoom out graphic, with writing on side, 22 March Rebel Ambush)

JOURNALIST: On Friday soldiers came under a kilometre long rebel ambush.

(Add another two lines to the graphic "23 March Rebel Attack)

JOURNALIST: the following day a hundred were attacked by 3000 rebels on the outskirts of the capital Bangui, and a high intensity 13 hour long battle ensued. Sporadic fire on SANDF positions continued through the night.

(Add another two lines to the graphics 24 March Ceasefire)

JOURNALIST: Yesterday rebels raised the white flag.

(Picture of CAR leader, Francois Bozize)

JOURNALIST: Central African Republic leader, Francois Bozize, who himself seized power in a coup on 2003, fled to Cameroon yesterday.

(gunfire can be heard, urban part of CAR)

Central African Republic – Bangui

JOURNALIST: Bangui, a capital looted and disarray.

(Soldiers on the side of the road in a vehicle)

JOURNALIST: 13 South African troops perished in a rebel onslaught

(part of urban area of Bangui)

JOURNALIST: hospitals are inundated with local casualties.

(soldiers carrying luggage walking towards and aircraft)

JOURNALIST: France has deployed 300 more troops to protect its citizens and airport.

(SANDF official is doing media briefing. Behind him are SA flags, a government banner)

JOURNALIST: Back home chilling details...

(soldier in bushes)

JOURNALIST: Chilling details of a hopelessly outgunned...

(army truck)

JOURNALIST: and outnumbered local force emerged

Gen. Solly Shoke – SANDF giving briefing with flags and official banner behind him. It was a very high intensity, high tempo battle that lasted for more than 9 hours

(soldiers carrying guns in city centre as citizen were talking around)

Shoke: The South African forces were about just under 200 because others were still in the base. It was 200 against plus minus 3000 rebel forces.

(in the streets of Bangui)

JOURNALIST: no additional troops will be sent to the rebel –held country. No troops will be evacuated either.

Zuma giving an address inside, behind him a banner: And our being there was basically related to the task that I'd given. And I said that we were, therefore, in our place. We were not fighting anyone until we were attacked. We then defended ourselves.

(Burnt car on its side with people around it in rural area)

JOURNALIST: The defence union disagrees.

(women carrying load walking down rural looking path)

It wants all troops evacuate immediately.

Pikkie Greef – SANDU doing an interview outside: SANDU is much perturbed about the fact there were casualties. Especially given the information that we have that the presidency was warned last week already that the situation was going to escalate and that conflict would be possible. Despite those warnings, our troops were kept there. They are not there to wage conventional warfare or military operations. They were there for training exercises.

(urban area, perhaps in South Africa)

JOURNALIST: Dozens of soldiers were airlifted to one military hospital in Pretoria.

(close up of woman wiping her face with tissue)

JOURNALIST: But some families are frustrated that the defence forces has not kept them abreast

(Picture of soldier carrying a gun)

JOURNALIST: with the situation

Florah Seletwana – Sister doing an interview outside of the house: When we tried to call him, we tried to contact him, nobody is answering the phone. So we can't sleep; we can't eat. We really don't know what to do now. There's nothing that we can do. We just hope, and wish, and pray that wherever he is, he is safe...

(car driving with a gun mounted on it)

JOURNALIST: rebel fighters are set on sealing their power grab. But already cracks are emerging within the rebel movement. One pledged to name a power sharing government in a bid to defuse international criticism.

ANCHOR: Pretoria is adamant it only agreed to peacekeeping operations in the Central African Republic. The country's deposed president was in South Africa last to appeal for protection and assistance.

Pretoria

(Zuma walks onto podium with government emblem and BRICS banner in background)

Zuma giving an address from a podium indoors

JOURNALIST: Pretoria – attempting to clarify

(President of the CAR walking somewhere outside)

JOURNALIST: its position on the Central African Republic. Last week, a private meeting...

(CAR president greeting supporters)

JOURNALIST: between the toppled president and president Jacob Zuma. But did Bozize's appeal then not raise any alarm bells? ‘

Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula – Defence Minister sitting indoors doing interview: You may say maybe that was very naive of us, but no because there had always been this pressure that help, help, you people, please help because there's a threat against me, and perhaps we took it light.

(SANDF official giving briefing indoors with government banner and flags behind him)

JOURNALIST: and why didn't Pretoria withdraw its troops from a potentially volatile situation?

Nosiviwe: It is important to err on the side of caution, but Vuyo, truth of the matter is we were not there for a battle. We there to assist in capacity building because it is in the interest of the continent.

(SANDF official giving briefing indoors with government banner and flags behind him)

JOURNALIST: Pretoria is still reviewing its defence operation in the central African republic. And that may take a few more weeks, perhaps months.

SOQ

ANCHOR: The AU and the UN have joined the chorus of condemnation. UN Secretary General, Ban Ki Moon has spoken to President Zuma and several other heads of state. He has called for the believable agreements that established reforms, led by a power sharing transitional government in the Central African Republic to be implemented.

(building oversees with flags flying outside of it)

United Nations – New York

JOURNALIST: The UN secretariat is calling the situation precarious

Man working at desk

JOURNALIST: and says the political affairs department is ready to brief the security council Martin Nesirky – UN Secretary General Spokesperson doing interview seated with journalist in shot: The secretary general condemns this unconstitutional ceasing of power in the Central African Republic, and he's concerned on a number of fronts. One there appear to have been human rights abuses. This is obviously something where people will need to be held accountable. Secondly there's a dire humanitarian situation. We have to remember that there are many ordinary people who are in panic and fearing for their lives and their livelihoods.

(Graphic with a rural soldier carrying a gun, writing "The Council has decided to suspend...CAR...from all AU activities. Au Peace and Security Council"... "...worsening humanitarian situation & widespread human rights abuses...US State Department"... "...strengthen military presence in Bangui to protect French national. French President Francois Hollande)

JOURNALIST: The peace and security council announced a CAR suspension from all AU activities with immediate effect. While the US state department expressed concern at the worsening humanitarian, and human rights situation. While France indicated, it would strengthen its military presence in the country to protect French nationals.

(Rural African people standing around in what looks like a village. Four carrying someone on a stretcher)

JOURNALIST: The UN says they are working to secure staff in the country

Martin: There are a number of UN Staff there. Of course many humanitarian workers, and of course those who are working within our political mission there. It's rather precarious, but also we're concerned about the safety of our staff on the ground...

(Soldiers on vehicle with SA flag)

Martin: and also for the people of the Central African Republic

(groups of soldiers with smoke coming from somewhere)

Martin: As we for many other humanitarian workers from international non-governmental organisations

Journalist does PTC from inside, behind him an SABC logo: The situation now invariably turns to the UN Security Council The SABC understands that at the behest of France, the council will meet for late on Monday in order to get a clearer picture of exactly what is happening on the ground.

SOQ

ANCHOR: Meanwhile Central African Republic players who lost the world cup qualifier against Bafana-Bafana in Cape Town on Saturday evening have not yet returned home. Their overseas based players will leave for Paris tonight while their locally based players will fly to Cameroon where they will monitor the situation in their country.

(A group of players in blue and white attire with a bus behind them)

JOURNALIST: The players were not in the right frame of mind on Saturday. News of the rebels on the verge of ceasing power on the Central African Republic reached the squad on Friday, the eve of their match.

Gregoire Zowaye – Vice President: CAR FA doing interview outside: They are really disturbed. I tried first to get them to play saying that we are playing for two things. One for peace in our country, and one to try to win here in South Africa.

(players huddled in a group)

JOURNALIST: the players and officials have been in contact with their families, and all seems to be fine.

(soccer official with a Bafana, Castle and Absa banner behind him)

JOURNALIST: The South African Football Association has already started with logistical preparations for the return leg in the CAR should...

(picture of soldier and tanker)

JOURNALIST: the civil unrest continues in the country. A neutral venue would be identified.

(people walking around in urban area)

JOURNALIST: SAFA will take guidance from CAF and FIFA

Kirsten Nemetandani – SAFA President doing interview in what looks like a warehouse: I do not believe CAF could also be negligent to want to ask to play in a war torn zone or area, and of course we'll also rely on our own government. We have a presence in CAR. They will give us clear advice as to what the situation is. We wouldn't want to put anybody in danger, remember, there are spectators that are going to follow this team, and the team itself we cannot expose them to any risk.

(players and officials walking on to the pitch)

JOURNALIST: The return match is scheduled for the 7th of June.

SOQ

26 03 2013

Headline1: Brave soldiers mourned

(soldiers on vehicle, footage used before)

ANCHOR: The names of the soldiers killed in Central African Republic

(Close up of crying woman)

ANCHOR: released

(photo of a soldier)

Crying woman does an interview in a home. Voice over: Now in God's hands

Other people also fill the house

ANCHOR: Good evening. This is the news at 7. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty

ANCHOR: The names of the 13 soldiers who perished in a running gun battle with rebels in the Central African Republic have been released. The capital was seized by rebels in a coup at the weekend. Confusion still reigns over exactly what South African soldiers were doing in the CAR. Parliament was told in 2011 that cracked troops were protecting deposed president Francois Bozize. Today the defence minister confirmed this, but said they were subsequently withdrawn. But first the names of the soldiers listed as dead.

(Graphic with title "SANDF Fatalities")

ANCHOR: the deceased are all from the one parachute battalion in Bloemfontein
(names roll up on the screen like credits)

ANCHOR: about 200 SANDF soldiers faced a rebel force of more than 3000 in a high tempo battle lasting nine hours. The SANDF says the member who was reported missing in action has been found alive and is in good spirits. The South African government has extended its condolences to the family and friends of the deceased.

(woman wails, covers her face with her hands, in a home)

North West – Mahikeng

JOURNALIST: Matlake Matseka was inconsolable. Her worst fears confirmed just hours ago.

(photo of a soldier)

JOURNALIST: Matseka's only son, Karabo, was one of the 13 soldiers...

(soldiers in vehicle, footage used before)

JOURNALIST: who perished in a raging battle with armed insurgents...?

(footage of woman walking with loads on their head, used before)

JOURNALIST: in the central African republic

Woman, no label. Voiceover: It's now in God's hands.

(how in a village)

JOURNALIST: this tiny village is grief stricken.

Elliot Monch – family Spokesperson doing an interview at home: I am sure that we're working together with the South African defence force and with government. We will be able to give Karabo a proper send off

(two women standing around outside a house)

JOURNALIST: A stark contrast in Bloemfontein

Bloemfontein

JOURNALIST: This family breathed a sigh of relief

(two women outside house, journalist visible)

JOURNALIST: their son is alive

Kedibone Seletswane – Wife doing an interview seated on a couch inside home: The only thing I can say is that he's okay, and we shouldn't be worried, but the information about them coming home, nothing.

(gun mounted on a car, footage used before)

JOURNALIST: Bringing the bodies back home from the rebel held country may take a while

Brigadier Xolani Mabanga – SANDF spokesperson doing an interview outside: Removing mortal remains of from another country to another country is a process, and there are certain processes and procedures that have to be followed. Once all of that has been done then we'll be in a position to receive all of the members.

(back to crying woman and people sitting in the house)

JOURNALIST: and bereaved families won't find closure until their loved ones are laid to rest at home

(footage of soldier with gun)

SOQ

ANCHOR: Yesterday the defence minister said the troops were only providing training. In 2011 international relations told parliament that special forces were protecting the deposed president of that country, Francois Bozize

(people on the street)

JOURNALIST: The CAR issue fermenting for years. What precisely was South Africa's role there, and why the huge investment in a Francophone,

(soldiers in vehicle, footage used before)

JOURNALIST: non-SADC country. Pretoria is currently spending 21 million rand a month to keep a defence contingent in the mineral rich nation.

(Graphic of papers. Heading reads "Published in internal question paper No: 1 of 10 February 2011 Parly question and answer session)

JOURNALIST: in 2011 international relations told Parliament of a crack team of soldiers providing VIP protection. This was operation Morero.

"SANDF deployment in the CAR is divided into two mainly OP MORERO – a unit of the SANDF Special Forces that was deployed in CAR to provide VIP protection to President Bozize and"

JOURNALIST: Second part was operation Vimbesela dealing with training and refurbishing military bases

"Operation Vimbezela – the SANDF's mission involved in the refurbishment of the military bases and the training of the military personnel of that country"

JOURNALIST: Yesterday the defence minister said no troops

(CAR president walking, footage used before)

JOURNALIST: were protecting Bozize

Yesterday – Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, Defence Minister: Truth of the matter is we were not for a battle. We were there to assist in capacity building because it is in the interests of the continent

(Bozize shaking hands with supporters, footage used before)

JOURNALIST: Sources told the SABC that Pretoria had agreed to provide protection for Bozize in the wake of a government of national unity there. The troops were withdrawn when the GNU began unravelling.

Graphic of document stamped with government stamp and dated 29 Jan 2013

JOURNALIST: In January, President Jacob Zuma told parliament the operations centred on remobilising the CAR's defence force

"Dear Chairperson. EMPLOYMENT OF THE SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL DEFENCE FORCE FOR SERVICE IN FULFILMENT OF AN INTERNATIONAL OBLIGATION OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA TOWARDS THE CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC"

"Members of the SANDF employed will assist with capability building of the CAR Defence Force and will also assist that country with planning and implementation of the Disarmament, Demobilization and Re-integration process">

JOURNALIST: This included demobilisation and capacity building

(close-up of soldier)

JOURNALIST: the five year programme, until 2018, was slated to cost tax payer 1.2 billion rand. The official opposition is crying foul.

David Maynier – DA MP doing interview outside parliament: the joint standing committee on defence, which is the parliamentary committee which is responsible for scrutiny and oversight of the SANDF and the department of defence did not meet to discuss the deployment of the SANDF to the CAR, and it did not ask the hard questions that it ought to have.

Sediane Montsitsi – Joint Standing committee on defence doing an interview in an office standing: The committee has met about the issue of the letters. In that particular meeting, Maynier did not attend. We are going to be sitting as a committee in future to deliberate most in particular about how we are going to be able to resource our own forces to withstand the onslaught against them.

(soldiers on vehicle, used before)

JOURNALIST: The DA says it has written to the speaker requesting a parliamentary inquiry into the deployment of troops into the CAR

ANCHOR: Today the defence minister sought to clarify Pretoria's position

Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula – Defence meeting doing an interview seated in a studio: In 2008 South Africa then decided that we have now trained people responsible for VIP protection, and; therefore, we cannot we may not continue to have people deployed for purposes of the presidential guard because that is not the mandate of the defence force. So those people were withdrawn. And I must tell you that over the years, since 2008, there's been an on-going discussion about please, after the group that is here conducting training, can we have a group that is responsible for the presidential guard, and we've refused and said no.

ANCHOR: One of the leaders of the Central African Republic Seleka Rebel Coalition, Michele Djotodia, has declared on radio that he has dissolved the country's constitution. He plans to stay in power until 2016.

(Graphic of map marked CAR, Sudan, Cameroon, DRC and Bangui)

ANCHOR: As Francois Bozize fled to neighbouring Cameroon, Djotodia declared himself president with elections in 3 years. That's when the terms of the toppled president expires. Seleka rebels are patrolling the deserted streets...

(people on the back of a bakkie, carrying guns, driving)

ANCHOR: of the capital Bangui, despite a curfew.

(closed shops, rubbish outside them)

ANCHOR: Looters and armed gangs have been roaming the streets

(Driving behind a car with armed men)

ANCHOR: and pillaging is continuing. The UN says tens of thousands of people have fled the country...

(men in army gear with weapons)

ANCHOR: Into neighbouring DRC and Cameroon. Djotodia justified the coup saying had veered into dictatorship...

(container with bullets)

ANCHOR: during ten years in power.

(containers, armed men)

ANCHOR: he said he would name a power sharing government...

(an armed man standing on the street corner)

ANCHOR: in an effort to diffuse international condemnation...

(armed men guarding gate)

ANCHOR: the coup

(army van with armed men driving off)

27 03 2013

(Gate written P.R. and an emblem)

Headline 2: Questions over SA troops in CAR

ANCHOR: Circumstances unclear around the battle
(people, some in army gear and armed sitting around)

ANCHOR: that killed 13 SANDF soldiers...
(gun mounted on car driving into the gate)

ANCHOR: in the Central African Republic

Man one does interview outside: The military that attacked us first were Bozize's defence force

Man in SANDF uniform does interview outside: This is the time to mourn the death of the South African heroes, not the time to be pointing fingers...
(vans outside a building with flags)

ANCHOR: The South African defence force has rejected claims that Central African Republic government troops attacked its soldiers. The defence union says 13 SANDF soldiers died in an ambush by the same soldiers they were training for the past 6 years. 27 were injured in the battle that lasted more than 9 hours and ousted president Francois Bozize

(footage of soldiers on vehicle, been used before)

JOURNALIST: Many questions remain unanswered. The defence force union say their counterparts in that country turned on them.

(armoured truck with soldier through roof, footage has been used before)

JOURNALIST: This they claim is because the military had conspired with the rebels...
(Picture outside an official building with an illustration of the flag on the hard gate and flags inside. Soldiers sitting outside)

JOURNALIST: ...to oust CAR president, Francois Bozize
(gun mounted on car, driving into the gates of this official building)

Voice heard, but no face shown: The military that attacked us first were...

Jeff Dubazana – SANDU spokesperson doing an interview outside: Bozize's defence force army. It was because they already had intentions of deposing Bozize himself. In the process of carrying out that intention, they then attacked the South African military.

Brig-Gen. Xolani Mabanga – SANDF Spokesperson doing an interview outside: This is the time to mourn the death of South African heroes. Not the time to be pointing fingers. Not the time to try and win or rally support or credibility or whatsoever they want to achieve which I don't know.

(footage of soldiers at vehicle, has been used before)

JOURNALIST: The union also questioned government's stance on retaining the troops in that country.

(footage of lawyer at work in his office)

JOURNALIST: a move supported by some legal analysts

Pierre de Vos – legal analyst doing an interview in his office with books behind him: It's difficult to understand the reason for keeping the military there, at least from a legal perspective, because although there was a bilateral agreement in terms of which our troops were sent to CAR, when the very foundation for...

(soldiers interacting) De Vos: such an agreement disappears, then that agreement back to footage of de Vos: completely falls away

(Footage of people in the street, a group of armed men in soldier gear driving down the dirt street. The area does not look urban, barring the street lights)

JOURNALIST: There's still no clear indication from government about why the South African military remains in CAR
SOQ

28 03 2013

Defence minister, Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, has refuted media reports that the SANDF deployed soldiers to the Central African Republic to protect ANC business interests in that country. Mapisa-Nqakula was speaking during the official ceremony to receive the remains of the soldiers killed in the CAR

Pretoria

(soldiers carrying coffins, marching with band beating drums)

JOURNALIST: a slow march in honour of the fallen soldiers. The Minister comforted family members, saying they had died as heroes and not cowards in the service of their country...

(Minister hugging family members)

JOURNALIST: She refuted media reports that the soldiers had been sent to protect the interests of chancellor house.

Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula –Defence Minister giving an address during the funeral. Media around and other people: Yes they were in the Central African Republic and they died in the Central African Republic because we had a bilateral agreement with the people of the Central African Republic

(Coffins being moved into a hearse)

JOURNALIST: The family was little comfort for families who had lost their loved ones.

Bishop Schalk Pholo – Family Member doing an interview outside We were not so much impressed about the whole ceremony because of our expectations from the hall to the parade, they will be given to us, and they will just pass in front of us. It was just from the hall, straight to the vehicles, so it's whereby we were surprised

(soldiers standing guard as heroes drive off)

JOURNALIST: Funeral arrangements will be confirmed after discussions with officials of the defence force and families.

SOQ

Story 9

ANCHOR: Deputy-Defence Minister, Thabang Makwetla and SANDF chief General, Solly Shokwe, paid a brief visit to soldiers at the 1 military hospital in Tabetswane today. The soldiers are among the 27 who were injured in the Central African Republic at the weekend.

Pretoria

(injured soldier)

JOURNALIST: 19 soldiers are still in hospital.

(Minister interacting with injured soldiers)

JOURNALIST: They've been praised for the bravery and commitment.

Thabang Makwetla - Deputy Defence Minister addressed one of the soldiers, slightly audible: We're going to refer to you as a battle scarred soldier. It means you are a soldier who's been there, done that. You've seen it all.

(soldiers standing guard, pans out to reveal another group of soldiers standing guard outside hospital)

JOURNALIST: The defence department says the soldiers were in the Central African republic as part of a bilateral agreement.

(Army officials interact with soldiers)

But then-minister of defence, Mosiou Lekota says deviated from the original memorandum of understanding, signed with the country, six years ago.

Mosiua Lekota – Former Defence Minister doing an interview outside It was never the mandate of the South African soldiers to take the front line and fight and shoot and kill or shot and be killed against the people of the Central African Republic.

(Media contingent gathers around minister as he interacts with soldiers)

JOURNALIST: All soldiers involved in the combat are expected to be official highly honoured

(footage outside hospital)

SOQ

30 03 2013

Headline 1: Seeking answers and solution

ANCHOR: A regional summit in Chad...

(Soldier standing outside a gate with CAR flag. Carrying a gun)

ANCHOR: to diffuse the Central African Republic crisis.

(President Zuma giving an address at a podium with deputy international relations minister, Marius Fransman, on the panel on stage)

ANCHOR: and three ministers...

(Minister, including defence minister Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, seated, behind a banner written Chief Joint operations)

ANCHOR: to attend

Spokesperson for international relations, Clayson Monyela doing an interview outside: The only item on the agenda will be the situation in the Central African Republic because what has happened violates the liberal agreement.

ANCHOR: A very good evening to you and welcome to the news at 7.

ANCHOR: The unfolding events in the Central African Republic are to be discussed at the Economic Community of Central African States, ECCAS next week. President Jacob Zuma will meet with his central African counterparts to discuss a political solution. Rebels in the CAR staged a coup last week, ousting President Francois Bozize. ECCAS facilitated a meeting in Libreville in January. It ended with the rebels and Bozize agreeing on a ceasefire and a national unity government. The rebels later accused Bozize of renegeing on the deal.

(Soldiers are standing outside gate with flag and Pr.)

JOURNALIST: A hastily convened summit...

(soldiers walking to bakkie)

JOURNALIST: to bring political stability to the CAR

(solider standing outside gate armed)

JOURNALIST: coups do not reflect well on the AU

(soldiers armed at the back of a van that has been spray painted in army colours with the label Intervention Seleka)

JOURNALIST: set out to promote brotherhood among the African nations. A coup in which 13 south African paratroopers were killed serves only to embarrass Pretoria.

(Soldiers in moving army truck. French flag on one of the vans)

JOURNALIST: Precisely what the soldier's mandate was remains murky

(vehicles with men in soldier gear, lots of ammunition, guns)

JOURNALIST: explanations range from VIP protection to training and capacity building. In the absence of an undiluted statement, conspiracy theories have emerged. From protecting South African oil interests and politically linked companies, to propping up Bozize

(Zuma addressing delegates, government banner in the background, slightly audible, wide shot)

JOURNALIST: next week President Zuma...

(Close up of Zuma at podium)

JOURNALIST: travels to Chad. His choice of ministers indicative of the gravity of the meeting.

(minister seated at another occasion)

JOURNALIST: The defence...

(minister seated at another occasion)

JOURNALIST: international relations and state security ministers will accompany him.

Clayson Monyela – International Relations doing an interview outside: The only item on the agenda will be the situation in the Central African Republic because what has happened violates the liberal agreement. So the region then wants to discuss, take stock of what has happened, and discuss what becomes the way forward with the input from South Africa.

(AU chairperson, Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma shaking hands with Russian President at BRICS summit standing. Next to her is a seated Zuma who is smiling)

JOURNALIST: President Zuma will have to map out the role of South African troops in the CAR

(Troops driving around in van, armed. Some standing in street)

JOURNALIST: Rebel leader, Michel Djotodia already seems to be taking an anti-Pretoria stance.

(painted sign with Vimbezela written on and maps of CAR and South Africa)

JOURNALIST: He's said to review current mining and oil contracts where South African has a heavy hand

(Van with Celeca written on, also the same sign painted on the wall. Soldiers guarding gate armed)

JOURNALIST: The emergency ECCAS meeting will discuss...

(soldiers standing around outside)

JOURNALIST: a solution to the CAR.

(footage of gun wielding vehicle driving into gate)

SOQ

ANCHOR: Before leaving Pretoria for the summit, President Zuma is expected to address the memorial service of the 13 South African soldiers who died in the country.

ANCHOR: But first for the day's top stories. Opposition parties want members of parliament called back from recess for an urgent joint sitting on South Africa's military involvement in the central African republic. This follows the latest reports on events surrounding the death of 13 soldiers, and reports of a new troop build-up in Uganda. Parties are also demanding that president Jacob Zuma appear before parliament to explain these issues.

(footage of soldiers in vehicle, file footage)

JOURNALIST: Officially a training and logistical mission in the CAR, it ended with soldiers coming back in body bags. Survivors have reportedly told of being outgunned and of a shootout with rebel child soldiers

(DA MPs are walking into a room with a DA TV screen. Front, Helen, then Lindiwe, the David Maynier)

JOURNALIST: There's also speculation as to why South African troops were there. Now there's talk...'

(Journalist taking pic at briefing)

JOURNALIST: that more of our troops are to be sent to central Africa.

David Maynier – DA Shadow Defence Minister giving briefing inside DA briefing room: A small contingent of soldiers are in the CAR, perhaps about 20. But the concern is, although troops may have been withdrawn, troops have been redeployed to both Uganda and the DRC

(footage of journalists at briefing)
JOURNALIST: Opposition parties want to step up their oversight responsibilities. They want the president to clear up discrepancies between what he told them in December and what transpired in recent weeks.

(Close-up of Lindiwe Mazibuko)

JOURNALIST: The DA will submit a request calling for a debate

(close-up of Zille)
JOURNALIST: to force the president to withdraw all soldiers...

(mid shot of Lindiwe and David)
JOURNALIST: ...from that region. The IFP supports the move.

Mario Oriani-Ambrosini – IFP MP doing an interview indoors: The president needs to come to parliament, he needs to come out of his hideout and tell us exactly what is going on. What went on, and what he planned

(journalists at briefing)

JOURNALIST: but the ANC says opposition parties are jumping the gun

Moloto Mothapo doing an interview indoors: A joint sitting, in itself, cannot take any decision. It has got no mandate to take any decision. A decision on a recommendation of a committee can only be dealt with by an individual house of parliament such as the national assembly of parliament individually, and the national council of provinces individually

(Footage of Defence Minister doing briefing)
JOURNALIST: Opposition parties also demand full disclosure from the defence minister and her generals

Steve Swarts – ACDP MP: They would need to explain the circumstances surrounding the tragic loss of thirteen South African lives. What were the logistical support? What air support? What ammunition support did we have on the ground? What intelligence support did we have? And why didn't we embark upon a strategic withdrawal?

(footage from inside parliament)

JOURNALIST: The SANDF won't comment, saying it's a political matter now.

Parliament's joint standing committee on defence plans to meet on Thursday to discuss the issue

(Profile headshots of 12 soldiers. In the background a South African flag)

JOURNALIST: President Zuma will attend a memorial service tomorrow for the 13 dead soldiers.

(footage of a meeting in a medium sized hall; file footage from CAR which has been used before)

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile in the central African republic...

(medium shot of a man seated with a podium microphone in front of him)

JOURNALIST: coup leader, and self-declared president, Michel Djotodia, says he will also serve as the country's defence minister. Earlier he said he would stay on as president until the country's next elections, only scheduled in 2016. Members of his Seleka rebel alliance...

(footage of people in army gear on bakkies, footage from file)

JOURNALIST: ... were awarded other senior government posts. They include the minister of mines,

(people trading on street; footage from file)

JOURNALIST: security and public order

SOQ

ANCHOR: For more on this story we're now joined live in the studio by SANDF spokesperson, Brigadier Xolani Mabanga.

Anchor looks at page, then turns away from the camera and looks at guest who comes into shot with her. He head is turned away from camera and we see her back

ANCHOR: A very good evening Brigadier, thank you for joining us. Can you start with the memorial service? Can you provide more details on that?

Brig. Gen. Xolani Mabanga – SANDF Spokesperson: Good evening to you and good evening to the listeners. What we are going to have tomorrow is a memorial service to honour those who passed on or those who perished in the Central African republic. The service is scheduled to start at half past eleven tomorrow morning. And the commander in chief of the armed forces of South Africa or the South African defence force, and president of the republic is expected to be the main speaker

A asks question but is not in the shot: Now what can you tell us about the soldiers that were injured? Are they still in hospital? What's their condition like?

Mabanga: Our of the 27 south African defence force members who were injured and evacuated to hospital, ten are still in hospital in a stable condition. Most of them have released.

Anchor asks question, but for a portion of it she's out of the shot: From what we understand there's still troops in the central African republic. What's going to happen? Are we likely to see that you withdraw from the central African republic or are you going to bolster our presence there?

Mabanga: As the South African national defence force we still await government's directives in terms of we withdraw all troops that are currently in central African republic, or we reinforce them. So that will depend on the political direction.

ANCHOR: Talking about the political direction, president Jacob Zuma and the Defence minister are meeting in Chad to discuss this issue in the central African republic. What is likely to happen? In your opinion. I know I'm asking you to guess, in terms of our involvement in the Central African Republic, because there's been so much of talk about why were we there in the first place

Mabanga: Well I wouldn't like to make some speculations in the area of politics because that is not my area of responsibility. I will leave that to the politicians and government authorities.

Anchor, not in the shot: Okay, so we'll wait to see what happens there. In terms of media reports – there have been media reports that we've sent troops to Uganda any truth to that statement?

Mabanga: Not to my knowledge, in as far as that is concerned,

ANCHOR: Before I let you go can we talk about the crash with the SANDF soldiers that occurred in the Kruger national park. What can you tell us about that?

Mabanga: Unfortunately during the routing patrols that we were conducting as operation rhino, operation rhino is that South African National Defence Force anti-rhino poaching campaign or support, and then it happened that one of the patrol teams had that incident whereby the aircraft of the helicopter that they were travelling in, had to crash. The circumstances leading to that are still being investigated. Unfortunately we are not able to release any reports into that regard, however, the investigation is underway

ANCHOR: Okay, we know that five soldiers have been killed in that incident, their names, I'm told, have been released. In terms of their funeral arrangements what can you tell us? Are they likely to receive military honours?

Mabanga: It's still early at this stage to discuss the funeral arrangements. As you know, the incident has just happened. The families were informed, and then we released the names today. In terms of the funeral, there are two types of funeral services that the South African Defence Force gives to its members. One being the full military funeral service, and the second one being the semi military funeral service. Now what does each entail is always discussed with the family, and the family will choose either of the two. And then on the basis of that we prepare and support the family on the basis of that.

ANCHOR out of shot: So that will be done then in consultation with the family of those deceased soldiers. Thank you very much Brigadier Xolani Mabanga joining us there to talk about the Central African Republic as well as to talk about that crash involving SANDF soldiers that took place in the Kruger National Park.

02 04 2013

(pay jingle)

ANCHOR: Good evening. President Jacob Zuma has denounced claims that the South African Defence troops were deployed to the Central African Republic to protect deposed president, Francois Bozize. Zuma was speaking during a memorial service for 13 SANDF soldiers. The soldiers were killed during an attack...

(wide shot of memorial service with stage visible, someone on stage, a choir also on stage, two South African flags very prominent and the heads of the members of the audience)

Pretoria

ANCHOR: by the Seleka coalition rebel group that's taken over power
(Zuma at podium. SANDF official is standing next to him. SA flag behind him)

ANCHOR: in the central African republic. The African Union has since suspended...
(people in audience at memorial service)

ANCHOR: CAR, and imposed sanctions on rebel leaders. Weekend reports suggested that the soldiers were there to protect...
(Midshot of Zuma speaking on podium)

ANCHOR: ANC interests. President Zuma has had high praise for the soldiers calling them heroes. He urged the nation to be proud of them.
(soldiers at memorial service)

ANCHOR: survivors of the onslaught were also present, as were family and friends of the deceased

(footage of choir singing, although not really audible)

Voice of Zuma, although can't seem him yet: There has been a deliberate attempt to cast doubt and distort the purpose...

Zuma is speaking at podium no banner with his name: of operation Vimbezela, our mission in Central African Republic. We'll not be side-tracked by the campaign of those who are on a perpetual attack against the democratic government. Let me emphasise that we reject any insinuation that these soldiers were sent to the Central African Republic for any reason...

(ministers listening from audience)

Zuma: other than in pursuit of national interest

ANCHOR: The acting speaker of the national assembly, Nomaindia Mfeketo, has approved a request by the defence minister, Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula to deliver a statement with regard to troop deployment in the Central African Republic. Nqakula is expected to do this in parliament on the 23rd of April. All political parties will have an opportunity to respond to her statement. Now, the ANC in parliament has welcomed the move. The standing committee on defence is expected to deliberate on the developments in the CAR on Thursday. The DA and other parties have been calling for a full parliamentary enquiry into the Central African Incident

After sport and weather...

Anchor seated, then camera pans in to put her in mid shot, behind her is a screen with a picture from the SANDF memorial service with an SA flag: good evening you're watching SABC news, coming to you live from Johannesburg. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty. Let's take a look now at the day's top stories. President Jacob Zuma has lashed out at critics of the SANDF troop deployment to the Central African Republic, calling them peddlers of unfounded allegations. Zuma was speaking at the memorial service of the 13 soldiers who died in the CAR. Weakened reports suggest that the soldiers were there to protect ANC business interests. Rebels in the CAR staged a coup there a few weeks ago, ousting President Francois Bozize

(band playing music is audible; fades into the hands of someone holding a programme with the faces of the dead soldiers)

Pretoria

JOURNALIST: A sombre affair at the Swartkop military base. To honour fallen paratroopers.

(soldiers standing on stage in a saluting position with two SA flags behind them, music still playing)

(fades into footage of people attending the memorial service, some of them in soldier uniform)

JOURNALIST: the soldiers were under the command of major general Ervan Riyani Gen. Seven Jayne – SANDF giving an address from the podium inside the hall: The grass and the bushes of Bangui provided refuge for us as we sought cover in the dark hours...

(footage of people at memorial service)

Jiyane: from the pursuing insurgents. Shots were discharged in our direction, and we stood firm in our position. Only to hear from a disgruntled insurgent shouting "Yelape," now literally translated into "akunalutho" that's fokal. That's how the situation was. However the courageous soldiers of team Charlie managed to fight their way back to the base.

(footage of photos of deceased at memorial service)

JOURNALIST: President Zuma had high praise for the soldiers, calling them heroes. He urged the nation to be proud of them.

(Zuma delivering address from inside the tent at podium)

JOURNALIST: The president firmly rejected accusations that the troops were in the CAR because...

(fadeout from Zuma into people attending memorial)

JOURNALIST: the ANC has mining interests there

Zuma is giving address: We'll not be side-tracked by the campaign of those who are on a perpetual attack against the democratic government. Let me emphasise that we reject any insinuation that these soldiers were sent to the Central African Republic for any reason...

(ministers listening from audience)

Zuma: other than in pursuit of national interest, and the interests of the African continent

(A wounded person in a wheelchair with a cast on his right leg, being pushed to somewhere)

JOURNALIST: Survivors of the on slaughter were also present. As were family and friends of the deceased. President Jacob Zuma will depart for Chad to attend a hastily convened summit at Economic community of Central African States

Journalist does PTC from outside tent where memorial was held: The ECAS summit is expected to seek solutions to the on-going conflict in the CAR. Meanwhile, calls are growing for President Jacob Zuma to have the South African soldiers still in that country returned home.

SQO

ANCHOR: In Mahikeng, one of the 13 soldiers who died in the Central African Republic will be honoured by his community. 29-year old Karabo Edwin Matsheka will be buried among other heroes in his local cemetery.

North West - Mafikeng

(Dignitaries walking in street and shake hands with a man)

JOURNALIST: condolences were continuing to pour in at the Matsheka family house. At Montsiwa stat.

(a photo of a man in soldier gear with a gun)

JOURNALIST: Edwin has been described as a shy person, and a devout Christian.

(women sitting indoors)

JOURNALIST: His death is a big blow for the family.

Set hake Months Matsheka – Family member doing an interview outside: the mother is not employed. He was actually the bread winner, and, therefore, we see this as a very serious setback for the family.

(Thandi Modise and other dignitaries with family inside house)

JOURNALIST: North West Premier, Thandi Modise, and speaker of the provincial legislature, Supra Ramapilo, paid the grieving family a visit

Thandi Modise - North West Premier does an interview outside: The government of the North West has come here to show respect to the family, to say thank you for a life well lived, and given to this country, and this province,

(journalist interacting with a man seated with a banner behind them)

JOURNALIST: Kgosi Moletsiwa has offered the family the Kgotla...

(an open paved space)

JOURNALIST: a place where traditional gatherings are held, for Matheka's funeral service...
(A sign with Mahikeng, Tsidi Barolong and an impala picture)

JOURNALIST: to take place there

Kgosi Jeff Montsioa – Baroolong Boo Ra-Tshidi: Karabo Matsheka will be buried at the royal cemetery in Mahikeng. The service will take place at the Kgotla, the royal kraal, the meeting place of the community. And this is in honour of him as a hero, who fought for the nation.

(photo of man wearing soldier gear)

JOURNALIST: Matsheka is survived by his two year old son, Olwethu...

(Another picture of a man in soldier gear, this time wielding a gun)

JOURNALIST: his partner and mother. He will be buried at the weekend

(footage outside with rural houses visible)

SOQ

03 04 2013

All three in the shot. ANCHOR: You'll tell us more later on, then. First your day's top stories.

Headline 1– Acrimony in Chad

(Zuma walking out of jet and greeting dignitaries)

ANCHOR: A regional summit on the Central African Republic bogged down by disagreement

Jingle

ANCHOR: good evening. President Jacob Zuma is meeting his central African counterparts to discuss conflict resolution in the Central African Republic. Already, the 10 member state summit seems to be bogged down. The summit hasn't started and has broken into pre-summit deliberations...

(Graphic of a map of central African region with CHAD and Central African Republic highlighted and labelled. Other parts labelled are Nigeria, Sudan, Bangui, and Ndjamena. Small version of Africa map)

ANCHOR: President Zuma jetted into Chad this morning to the regional economic body, ECCAS. Already there appears to be disagreements about the summit agenda.

(old footage of people dressed as soldiers and army vehicles from CAR)

ANCHOR: The central African republic is on a knife's edge after a coup, two weeks ago. The AU doesn't recognise the coup leader, Michel Djotodia, and has automatically suspended the country. Meanwhile, parliament has scheduled a debate on the issue for the 23rd of April. Now we will be bringing you extensive coverage on that summit later in the bulletin. We will be chatting to an analyst, and also crossing live to our reporter in Chad Mzwai Mbetshe.

03 04 2014

Sport, weather, break...

ANCHOR standing in front of screen with a logo of CEEAC – ECCAS – Africa map with central countries highlighted and named, their flags in a circle around the map

ANCHOR: Welcome back. You're watching SABC news; I'm Vabakshnee Chetty.

ANCHOR: A meeting to discuss conflict resolution in the Central African Republic has been bogged down by disagreement. The economic community of central African states, ECCAS, and South Africa, are meeting in Chad after a coup in the Central African Republic. Now the summit, meant to have started at midday, is yet to convene. President Jacob Zuma is accompanied by three top ministers. Thirteen South African soldiers were killed when Seleka rebels overthrew the government of Francois Bozize last month. Let's first take a look at what exactly ECCAS is

(a graphic of Africa with central countries highlighted and a heading "ECCAS", the respective countries pop up with their names on display)

JOURNALIST: The member body was established in 1983 to promote stability and cooperation. In the 90s, it was inactive for several years because of financial difficulties, and the conflict in the great lakes area. The central African bloc brokered the CAR agreement in Gabon's capital, Libreville, in January this year. The power sharing deal led to the government of national unity, including both the now deposed Bozize and rebels. ECCAS deployed 500 peacekeepers in the CAR in the wake of the peace accord

(Graphic in the shape of Chad enlarged over the map of Africa. Picture written "Chadian President Idriss Deby")

JOURNALIST: Chadian President, Idris Deby, is its current chair.

Another journalist voices this story

(South African flag nearby buildings)

JOURNALIST: a meeting scheduled to begin at the presidential palace at midday *(delegates sitting around a table outside, although enclosed in walls, talking)*

JOURNALIST: but acrimony dominated. Instead president of ECCAS states covered on several villas for pre-summit discussions. The AU has suspended the CAR, and does not recognise coup leader, Michael Djotodia

(man sitting under tree, one on his laptop, another on his phone)

JOURNALIST: His rebel government was not invited

Zuma is doing an interview outside. Behind him, a South African flag hangs. No label: The discussion is still going on because the matter is quite complex. Of course, the position of the AU is being put very strongly, of not condoning any coup de ta, that is undertaken, and, therefore, not decorating it in any other manner. The discussion is going on. There is no result as yet.

(old footage of soldiers in CAR)

JOURNALIST: The coup has dire implications for Pretoria. Djotodia has vowed to review all contracts signed with South African companies. These have oil interests in that country. Thirteen soldiers perished in skirmish with 13 soldiers last month. Some were soldiers turned rebels. Ironically most were trained by South African forces. The troop deployment in the CAR will also form discussions in a meeting that is likely to decide the fate of South African soldiers who are still in the CAR.

Zuma doing interview: we have not discussed that. It's not a matter to discuss. We have discussed what do we do with an authority that declares itself a government after conducting a military coup.

(footage from parliament with the president attending)

JOURNALIST: Back home analysts say a complex political situation exists in the CAR. They say military intervention is unlikely to succeed.

Alfredo Hengari – SA Institute of International Affairs doing interview outside: my expectation is that they will be treading very carefully, but they would have to engage the new powers in Bangui, otherwise the political process is not going to move forward
(in parliament)

JOURNALIST: Parliament meanwhile has scheduled a debate on the issue for April 23rd. It's led to an outcry by opposition parties.

Moloto Mothapo – ANC doing interview outside: We commend the request of the minister, because indeed, because it shows the seriousness with which she regards her responsibilities.

David Maynier – DA doing an interview inside: I think the fact that the minister of defence will make a statement to the house one month after the disaster in the CAR demonstrates monumental contempt for parliament.

Mario Ambosini – IFP doing interview outside parliament: Nothing stops the minister today from table a report to parliament, even if it's going to be discussed on the 23rd.

Pieter Groenewalk – FF+ doing an interview outside: It's only the president who can really give those answers. But if they sort of duck and dive to give the real answers to a good questions, of course the people will think so, and; therefore, I also think that there is something more than just the military reasons.

(sound cuts)

(cars parked along street)

ANCHOR: Now to take that story further we cross live to our reporter Mzwai Mbetshe in the Chadian capital N'djamena, for the latest on the summit. A very good evening to you Mzwai and thank you for joining us. Has the meeting, in fact, gotten underway?

(Graphic of SABC journalist and map of Chad with N'djamena highlighted. A small phone icon.)

Voice of Mzwandile Mbetshe – N'djamena, Chad: thank you very much Vabakshnee. As you have indicated, the meeting has just got underway. I think at about an hour ago. Yes, the meeting go underway. And I think how I would describe the situation and the meeting here is it looks like a very delicate one. The meeting, as you have indicated, was supposed to have happened during the day, but there were certain complications among the presidents. As it consultations went on and on and on, so much so people thought there wasn't going to be a meeting.

(people driving in street, not clear where)

Mbetshe: so it came to a situation where there are many complex issues that need to be looked at. {sound very inaudible}

(wide shot of an open space with flags of various nations flying , a structure in the middle)

(close up shot of a painted billboard with a presidential looking man)

(wide shot of heads of state sitting outside a building this looks like a house)

(South African flag flying)

Mbetshe: there are many factors here, in this region coups...

(soldiers at the back of a Toyota bakkie, old footage)

Mbetshe: they tend to be quite an occurrence

(old footage of a meeting in a hall with someone addressing the group, old footage)

Mbetshe: What is it that should be done to resolve the situation in the CAR?

Anchor in mid shot: Now Mzwai can I just come in there you're saying earlier there were disagreements and they were broken up into groups where the deliberated separately, is that

an indication that there is obviously disagreement over whether there should be a military intervention or not

Voice of Mzwandile Mbetshe – N'Djamena, Chad his picture on a graphic with Chad highlighted: I would not be able to say exactly whether they are talking military intervention. I am aware that they are looking at all options available, all options on the table, and what should be done. This is indeed a very complex matter. You know South Africa has interests there. You know this country Chad has interests there. There are many other regional neighbours that have interests in this country. And the fact of the matter, Vabakshnee is that they have suspended this country from the AU, but now they are in power. So if you want to say something, you'd say ...how that will happen is gonna be very important. That's why this meeting is going to be important in whether you engage the rebels directly and you try to force them out of power militarily, but as I've said to you, they do appear to have some sympathisers,, and I think that's the reason why even if you're speaking to the local media here you find out the friction between some of these countries you find that there may be one of two countries that are very sympathetic to the rebel government that is in CAR right now
Anchor back in mid shot: Thank you very much Mzwai, we're out of time but we'll have to leave it there, but thank you very much for that update. Coming to us live from the Capital in Chad, N'Djamena. To get a different view we now cross live to Dr Siphemande Zondi from the institute for global dialogue in our Pretoria studio...

(analysts picture begins to fade onto the screen behind the anchor)

ANCHOR: a very good evening to you Dr Zondi. It appears as if the defence force is sending military equipment out of the country. This may suggest military intervention, will this work?

(analysts on screen alone as it cuts anchor out)

Dr Simphamandla Zondi – Director Institute for Global Dialogue: Good evening. Certainly the customary way in which the AU and these regional bodies tend to deal with these particular issues is to put pressure on the government in power to undertake a serious process of transition to hand over power back to civilian control. The AU has already made an indication that they would not accept a three year calendar that was given by Djotodia, the Junta in Bangui, but that something up to a year would be rather acceptable. Because they don't want to send signals that there would be a three year of free reign by a military junta under suspension from the AU

(Anchor whose body in the shot. She is standing in studio with papers in her hand while looking at the screen with analyst on. He's looking head on at the camera)

ANCHOR: Do you think it's wise that they've left the rebels out of these talks?

(Zondi begins to speak with Anchor still in shot, and then it cuts to him alone): I think for a discussion that is meant to allow the countries of the region ECCAS to have consultations...

(footage of people driving in street, footage was used in previous crossing, old footage, in same order as previous crossing)

Zondi (not in the shot): about how to respond to this thing, and to have consultation also with the African Union which is represented by the commissioner for peace and security, Lamtana Lambert, it would need them to consult on their own before they decide to have an engagement with the rebels because if they don't do so they will be negotiating with the rebels before they've harmonised their positions and strategised together about how to respond to this situation, so it's correct that now, they come together and take regional positions uncontaminated, and then use that as the basis for talking to the junta.

Anchor and Zondi in shot. Same set up as previous segment: Here at home, the government has come under quite a lot of flak from South African for our initial participation in the

Central African Republic now what should the government be saying under these circumstances, should we be negotiating? Should we be considering even sending troops? Cut straight to Zondi frame: I think we should all understand the death of 13 is not a small thing. These are souls, and, therefore, people are very correct to be concerned about all sorts of things, but we should be careful not to lose sight of the ball here, and the ball in this particular case is South Africa is expected to play an important role to fulfil the mission and the mandate it took upon itself under president Mandela in 1994, which is to further African renaissance, and act and assist and use its privilege to enable a transition towards peace, stability, governance, and democracy on the continent, so there should be no question about withdrawal. I heard the questions of withdrawal, and withdrawal not only from the South African public, but from the DRC and others. Those are particularly unfortunate and unhelpful moves. It just goes to show that some people don't understand that South Africa is an African country, and; therefore, it has an obligation to assist on the African continent. Anchor and Zondi in shot. Anchor looking at Zondi on screen: Thank you very much for your views and insights. That was invaluable. That was Dr Simphamandla Zondi, coming to us live from our studios in Pretoria
Cut to jingle...

04 04 2013

ANCHOR: Looking forward to hearing more on that and other sporting and business stories. But first, let's take a look at the day's top news stories.

(footage of Zuma and other dignitaries walking)

Headlines 1– C.A.R Reprieve

ANCHOR: regional summit offers a way out for rebel-held Central African Republic...

(dignitary indoors seated in a room with a number of flags, looks like meeting is underway)

ANCHOR: as South African troops prepare to return home.

ANCHOR: Good evening. The Central African Republic's coup leader, Michel Djotodia has accepted the outcome of a regional summit on the country's crisis. He's agreed that a new council should manage the transition until national elections are held. Meanwhile, South African troops deployed in the Central African Republic are coming home.

(MPs and other government officials in parliament. Defence Minister, Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula in frame)

ANCHOR: back home the defence minister faced tough questions in parliament.

Today – Parliament

ANCHOR: She gave a detailed account why South African troops were in the Central African Republic. At one point...

(footage of soldiers carrying coffins draped with South African flag, marching)

ANCHOR: the minister admitted the attack was a bolt from the blue. Thirteen South African soldiers were killed in a rebel attack...

(pictures of soldiers with SA flag graphic behind them)

ANCHOR: on their compound in Bangui last month

A in shot: We will of course, later in the bulletin, bring you more detailed analysis of what's happening in the Central African Republic and South Africa's withdrawal.

ANCHOR standing: Good evening. You're watching SABC News. We're coming to you live from Johannesburg. If you've just joined us a very warm welcome to you. If you've been with us since 6.30 this evening, thank you for staying with us. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty. Let's now take a look at the day's top stories...

(people in court)

Top Stories 1b: C.A.R Reprieve

ANCHOR: Central African Republic's Coup leader accept ECCAS resolution and South African troops coming home

ANCHOR is standing. Behind her a screen with a watermark image of South African flag, and on top of that an official looking logo: The Central African Republic's coup leader, Michel Djotodia has accepted the outcome of a regional summit on the country's crisis. He's agreed that a new council should manage the transition until a national poll is held. This will help prevent sanctions against one of the world's poorest nations, meanwhile South African troops deployed in the Central African Republic are coming home.

(heads of state at a meeting with flags in the background)

JOURNALIST: The summit tabled...

(an official addressing the summit)

Last night – N'Djamena Chad

JOURNALIST: a new dispensation for the CAR. It wants a joint body to lead the transition...

(officials seated with journalists in background)

JOURNALIST: and an interim president...

(Man in a suite walking down the street with hands raise triumphantly. Flagged by another man, people in army gear, journalist, and people lining the street)

JOURNALIST: elected by this body. It's also called for elections within 18 months.

(People are lining the street and cheering. File)

JOURNALIST: Rebel leader, Michel Djotodia, has agreed to the resolutions..

(man walking down the street cheering)

JOURNALIST: a move predicted by Pretoria.

Maite Nkoane-Mashabane – International Relations Minister doing a briefing indoors, seated with department's banner in the background: what alternative would they have? If ECCAS the region itself says this is what we expect of you, how do you operate in an area where you are saying I will not co-operate with my region? I will not co-operate with my continent. I have done things unconstitutionally. I've actually suspended the constitution. I've dissolved parliament. And I'm saying I will not co-operate with anyone.

(file footage of soldiers in army vehicle)

JOURNALIST: South African troops meanwhile are preparing to return home. The emergency Chad summit reluctantly agreed to this

Zuma is giving an interview in a room. Seated with SA flag in the corner: We have taken a decision to withdraw our soldiers. And it is important to indicate the reasons why. We were in the Central African Republic on the basis of the agreement that was there between South Africa and the Central African Republic. Our mission...

(Footage of structure. File footage)

Zuma: was to help train the soldiers.

(People are driving down the street in motor bikes. Used before)

Zuma: and our agreement details what was supposed to be done.

(Government officials walking in parliament. Including defence minister)

JOURNALIST: back home

Today – Parliament

JOURNALIST: tough questions in parliament. At one point the defence minister admitted the attack was a bold from the blue

Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula – Minister of Defence giving briefing in parliament, seated:

Sitting here, I'm still wondering how we lost it. What happened? Is it that indeed the information was not there or is it that we underestimated the extent?

(frame peels away)

Mapisa-Nqakula: I've never heard of rebels which move around with mortars and heavy calibre machinery.

(DA's Helen Zille, Lindiwe Mazibuko and David Maynier walk into a room for briefing. DA screen. Footage has been used before)

JOURNALIST: Opposition parties questioned the poor defence intelligence and early warning systems.

White man in parliament asks question seated: How is it possible that we didn't see that?

Black man seated asks question: Why did we not equip our soldiers appropriately? They had to do with what they had

David Maynier asking question seated in Parliament: There are many more questions that need to be asked.

Steve Swartz asks question seated: Should one not have an independent inquiry into everything that happened here? Because surely this has an implication for our forces that are deployed elsewhere as well.

(soldiers standing guard outside a gate written P.R. File footage)

JOURNALIST: The timelines for the withdrawal of troops have not been disclosed

(Soldiers in bakkie. File)

JOURNALIST: Their presence there has been a source of contention. Especially after rebels killed...

(Soldiers walking with coffin draped in SA flag. Footage used before)

JOURNALIST: 13 South African soldiers on a foreign battlefield.

SOQ

ANCHOR is standing with a screen with the face of a man who is seated: To take the story further we now cross over to Pretoria where David Zuminu is standing by. He's from the Institute for Security Studies. A very good evening to you David. Thank you for joining us. We saw in that clip President Jacob Zuma saying the troops are coming back, giving reasons for the withdrawal, but somewhat this issue is still veiled in secrecy. Has the South African government handled the situation well?

David Zounmenou – Senior Researcher: ISS doing interview. Screen cuts to him: I think I'm not well placed to comment on how South African government actually handled that issue but what we can say is that the dynamics in the South African Republic have changed considerably for the past ten days since the way that Central Africa enters into bilateral agreements collapsed, and the president is now in exile. But there are some key questions that are meant to be addressed which will have implications for future engagements in peace-keeping operations on the continent. Because the fundamental issue will be do we really have a peace to keep, and are there guarantees for troops that we are sending in the country to be safe, and protected, and will it be military processes. So these are some of the issues that remain on the table.

ANCHOR: Well talking about those implications then, should we be withdrawing our peacekeeping troops on the continent?

David: I think the problem is not with the peacekeeping forces from the continent. The problem is how you actually work with the processes, how you work with partners in the region. Because what's happened in the Central African Republic, views from the public is that Bozize has lost the trust and confidence of the regional allies and of actually Chad and Congo Brazzaville because those countries view the call that he asked for support from South Africa was a sign of a lack of confidence in the original mechanism, and; therefore, Chad particularly did not do much to stop the rebel coup. And also a second dynamic that I need to stress is Francois Bozize himself really taking advantage of South African presence, found now that he has the protection that he needed, and to show complete disregard to the Libreville agreement that was signed, which was asking him to undertake reforms and to commit himself to the implementation of those reforms. Failure to really address some of those issues really opened the road for Seleka, who was well armed, well equipped and decided to really challenge these authorities that led really to his downfall.

ANCHOR: Let's talk about Chad for a minute. They're seen as a defining force on the continent when it comes to issues. We saw agreements happening at that summit yesterday, when they broke down into disagreements. Do you think the view that other countries have of South Africa has somewhat changed?

David: I think South Africa is still enjoying some comparative advantage. Let us remember that South Africa is a functioning democracy with running institutions that many people aim at. But the impression that one really gets here is that South Africa really needs to take into consideration the regular mechanism, and always seek international approval when it comes to deploying troops in a particular region. Because we know, there is sensitivity when it comes to certain countries' policies. If South Africa comes to help in resolving the problem of Mali, or Chad, or Central African Republic, it is welcome, provided it really follows the framework that is there that has really been put in place and approved by the UN. And also I think it is very difficult for countries to send their troops in countries where there is not guarantee to protect the citizens. If you remember 1992 in Liberia, nobody wanted to send troops to that country because in 1992 American soldiers were killed in Somalia. In the US and international community, the reluctance to send troops to Rwanda, as a result, we experienced the Rwandan genocide. We have the onslaught that the rebel movement launched on Monrovia. So things are changing showing that we need to work within the international framework with the approval of the UN to avoid situations that will really compromise the genuine need to forces that will really stabilise some countries.

ANCHOR: Thank you very much that was David Zounmenou coming to us live from our Pretoria studios from the institute for security studies.

(ANCHOR is standing in front of the screen with a graphic of watermark of SA. In front an official looking logo)

ANCHOR: A sterling memorial service has been held at the Tempe military base for the 13 soldiers slain the Central African Republic. Seven of the Para bats who perished were from the military post. The memorial services for individual soldiers were also held.

(Soldiers as part of a congregation. Look like they are singing by you can't hear them)

JOURNALIST: A service to honour slain troops

Bloemfontein

(Zoom in on the hand of someone holding a programme)

JOURNALIST: Outgunned and outmanned they died in a fierce skirmish with rebels
(child crying in funeral)

JOURNALIST: News of the troop withdrawal washed over the army base with relief
William Robinson – Deceased's uncle doing an interview outside with people walking behind
him: I'm feeling a bit happy because I think the families of those people who are there, they
will also be relieved for their children who are coming back home.

(people lighting candles at memorial service)

JOURNALIST: The soldiers will be buried this weekend.

(footage of a group of soldiers in a smaller room, singing and dancing)

JOURNALIST: In Mahikeng, Defence force ministers, provincial government...

(people wearing mourning clothes seated)

North West - Mahikeng

JOURNALIST: and families honoured two of the soldiers.

Elliot Months – Matsheka Family doing interview outside a building standing: We are very
thankful for the prayers that we are receiving since the untimely death of Karabo Matsheka.

Bishop Schalk Phoolo – Ngaleka Family doing interview outside as well, standing: He's
death has really caused a lot of pain to the family. But anyhow, just because they know that
he fought for the government, he died as a hero. We are only really proud about that.

(officials walking outside past a tent)

JOURNALIST: In Limpopo a memorial service Seakamela Mokagadi Darius

(people seated in tent)

JOURNALIST: for

Limpopo

*(Picture of a man in army gear. Picture taken from a programme written " CPL Seakamela
Mokagadi Dariu, 1971 - 2013)*

JOURNALIST: The 42-year old leaves behind four children

Thoka Kgoale – Friend doing interview outside: You know the only solace that one has is
the fact that he has died doing what he loved doing. He was fighting for the country. And
one of the things that you never get used to is when you have to relate the passing on of one
person you knew so dearly...

Wilson Seakomela – Deceased's Uncle doing interview outside. Voice over: As the family
we've accepted that he's passed on. We've told his children that they should rejoice that he
died serving his nation. May his soul rest in peace.

(two men in soldier uniform standing in tent)

JOURNALIST: All soldiers will be buried in different funerals this weekend

06 04 2013

ANCHOR: To another top story now, twelve of the 13 soldiers who died fighting in the
Central African Republic have buried. Services for the men who were given full military
funerals took around the country.

(coffin draped in South African flag standing, while funeral proceed)

JOURNALIST: It was an emotional day for the family of rifle-man...

(ID type blown up picture of a man)

JOURNALIST: Karabo Matsheka.

(shot of coffin standing)

JOURNALIST: He was buried in the heroes acre of the

(close-up of women at funeral)

JOURNALIST: Baralongbatshidi community

North West – Mahikeng

Commander General Solly Shoke – SANDF Chief doing interview outside, at grave site:

They died in service of their country, and I, as the chief of the national defence force, I would like to say I'm proud of them. They did us proud, and as a country, I think we should honour them

(Coffin being transported by a mechanised device. Soldiers march alongside it)

JOURNALIST: Paratrooper Popo Selakali Siyamela...

(close-up of soldiers marching)

JOURNALIST: had been part of a number of peacekeeping missions, including in countries like Burundi and Sudan

Polokwane

(people at funeral looking on)

JOURNALIST: his colleague...

(man in army gear speaking at podium)

JOURNALIST: gave an emotional account of events...

(coffin gong underground, army officials standing in salute)

JOURNALIST: on that fateful day

Lieutenant Sindile Tyali – SANDF speaking at podium outside: We were outnumbered by the enemy. Even though the enemy outnumbered us by far, the heroes...*(speaks in isiXhosa)* they showed bravery

(coffin with flowers on inside a tent as funeral is underway)

JOURNALIST: In the Northern Cape, the grief stricken community of Maketlele...

(close up of woman wiping tears)

Northern Cape – Maketlele

JOURNALIST: paid their last respects

(mid shot of coffin with flowers on top and two pictures of a man on the side)

JOURNALIST: to 31 year old private Lesego Maxwell Lebatlang

Grace Barake – Niece doing interview at grave site. Behind her the funeral continues with scores of soldiers visible: There is no bitterness, but now after everything because we know that our son is a hero

(Coffin with SA flag draped on it at a funeral underway in a hall. Soldiers present and army official sitting on stage)

JOURNALIST: as his colleagues were taken to their final resting places across the country...

(close up of an ID type-picture of a man)

Johannesburg

JOURNALIST: Rifleman, Xolani Dlamini, was described as a fearless young man.

(funeral procession walking out of hall with army officials leader, soldiers carrying coffin behind them)

JOURNALIST: his uncle recounts that moment when the family was told of his death...

Vusi Dlamini – Uncle doing interview outside at grave site: We really felt that we lost Xolani because we saw this on TV before even a message came from the military.

(someone standing, not visible, holding a framed photo of a man in army gear, pans out to show people at funeral in the shot)

JOURNALIST: rifleman Thabiso Mabana is survived by his sister

(flowers and a picture of a man neatly packed on the ground)

JOURNALIST: his community will remember for...

(soldiers marching)

JOURNALIST: improving learning conditions in the area

Eastern Cape – Matatiele

(shots of soldiers boots marching)

JOURNALIST: As a 13-year old...

(Funeral procession is walking outside in what looks like a veld. An army vehicle is transporting a coffin draped in an SA flag)

JOURNALIST: he excelled in a speech and drama competition in Scotland. His community...

(close-up of someone wiping tears)

JOURNALIST: received a school and equipment as a result

(Soldiers seated, funeral with SA flag in a hall at another funeral. Army at podium giving an address)

JOURNALIST: in Cape Town, rifleman Vusimuzi Kanika

Western Cape

JOURNALIST: was remembered as a humble man who loved his job.

(woman with three children on her lap sitting at funeral)

JOURNALIST: while South Africa has already announced that its withdrawing its remaining troops...

(soldiers carrying a coffin draped in SA flag out of a gate)

JOURNALIST: in the CAR, the deputy international relations minister, told the SABC that the issue needed to be handled with sensitivity, as it touched on national security.

Marius Fransman – Dep. Min.: International Relations does interview outside. There are community members around him, an ambulance in the background: We must accept that it is a delicate process, and a sensitive process. It's a security national process, and I think we should accept that.

(three coffins draped in SA flags lined up in a hall with scores of soldier attending funeral)

JOURNALIST: a representative of the family of the three soldiers buried in Bloemfontein, say the families have not yet found closure

(Wide shot of people attending funeral)

Free State

JOURNALIST: speaking on behalf of corporal Ntabeleng Morosi, and rifleman Jimmy Nxosana and Rwabane Thulo...

(woman in black with son sleeping in her arms)

JOURNALIST: Vuyisile Nxosana called on government...

(women seated at table)

JOURNALIST: to explain what happened during the fight with rebels

(coffin being loaded on a vehicle)

JOURNALIST: Six of the 13 soldiers are being buried in the Free State

(Soldiers carrying guns, marching, led by an official. People stand around watching)

JOURNALIST: Rifleman MW Mbenjana will be buried at the Tiunhuis tomorrow

(army official comforting a woman)

JOURNALIST: his funeral will be the last

(soldiers carrying a coffin draped in SA flag)

SOQ

ANCHOR: To the Central African Republic now where Michelle Djotodia, the rebel who seized power last month has ordered the creation of a transitional body. The body will designate an interim president for the country. The decree complies with the demands of the six nation...

(man walking down the street, hand raise triumphantly, people standing around and journalists following him)

ANCHOR: Economic Community of Central African State
File – Central African Republic

ANCHOR: which rejected Djutodia's initial bid to declare himself the country's president, after his Seleka rebel coalition grabbed the capital, Bangui. The signed order establishes a 97 member transitional council, that will elect a new interim president, who will rule for no more than 18 months)

(soldiers with guns standing around)

JOURNALIST: The council will include members from across the political spectrum as well as union, judicial and religious figures.

(officials standing under marquee)

JOURNALIST: It will take on the legislative responsibility normally carried out by parliament.

(Man is addressing crowds from podium. Soldiers standing guard)

JOURNALIST: Observers say Djotodia may end up becoming the council's nominated interim president.

07 04 2013

Headlines – Final Farewell

*(Coffin being lowered underground as soldiers stand and salute, lone trumpet playing)
(People are attending funeral. Coffin draped in SA flag.)*

ANCHOR: The last of the...

(Close up of an ID-type photo)

ANCHOR: 13 soldiers killed in the Central African Republic...

(close up of woman at funeral with eyes closed)

ANCHOR: is laid to rest. This as the SANDF

(row of soldiers attending funeral)

ANCHOR: confirms its troops will be going to the DRC.

ANCHOR: A very good evening to you and welcome to the news at 7. I'm Natasha Thorp.

ANCHOR: Rank and File SANDF members have dismissed foreign media reports that more soldiers were killed in the Central African Republic than government had reported. They were attending the funeral of rifleman Mafu Bojane in Theunissen, in the Free State. He was the last of the 13 soldiers to be buried this weekend.

(Close up on an ID-type photo of a man, placed on a coffin draped in SA flag)

JOURNALIST: A final farewell for 26 year old Mafu Bojane

(close up of a woman whose eyes are closed)

JOURNALIST: He leaves behind a wife and daughter.

(wide shot of people at funeral)

JOURNALIST: The Bojane family believes his death was not in vain.

(coffin draped in flag, row of soldiers visible, audio of singing slightly audible)

JOURNALIST: saying he made a selfless sacrifice for his country.

(Soldiers marching with ordinary people also around)

JOURNALIST: Soldiers from the SANDF related tales of bravery. Of how soldiers withstood a lengthy battle with Seleka rebels.

Major Gen.: Bongani Mbatha – SANDF giving an address from the podium. Behind him people in civilian clothes: until the rebels raised the flag calling for a ceasefire and peace. We beat them up. Make no mistake about it. We beat them up. The media will not say it. I can tell you now, more than 600 of them died. We beat them up, and they will never touch us again

(people attending funeral)

JOURNALIST: Assistant foreign reports put the South African death toll at much higher than 13.

(close up of woman crying)

JOURNALIST: But an officer who was in the CAR say this was untrue.

Major Makau – SANDF speaking from the podium: Media is purporting now, seemingly they say 36 to 50 has also died of the South Africans. The media should ask themselves, why don't you go to the families of the people they say are not here because you can't hide a person for almost two weeks from the family.

(coffin in SA flag being transported)

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile the SANDF has confirmed it will be sending troops...

(preparations to put coffin underground)

JOURNALIST: to the Democratic Republic of Congo. They will contribute to a UN mission to neutralise armed groups in the conflict torn east of the country.

(coffin going underground)

SOQ

3. Cyril Karabus

ANCHOR: A UAE Court is expected to rule on the case of South African Professor, Cyril Karabus later this week. The court has already received a recommendation from a medical review committee in Karabus's case, which absolved him. Professor Karabus...

(footage of Karabus on a coach with a lady)

ANCHOR: ...was found guilty in 2003

File – United Arab Emirates

ANCHOR: on charges of manslaughter and fraud following the death of a three year old patient he was treating in Abu Dhabi

(close-up of Karabus hand, then pan out)

ANCHOR: Karabus was arrested in Dubai on August last year. The department of international relations and co-operation has called on all South African to pray for the completion of the case.

(Karabus, other people and Marius Fransman)

Marius Fransman – Dep. Min.: Int. Relations & co-operation speaking standing doing an interview: Now we are waiting for the verdict. The verdict is in the next 24 hours on Thursday morning. And we really call on the South African public, the media, civil society

and everyone, to keep in solidarity the thoughts to Professor Karabus, so that we do get the positive outcome that we all expect.

Michael Bagraim – Karabus Lawyer doing an interview outside: We shouted with joy when we heard this. The family are at home at the moment. They're in tears with happiness.

Headline 2: Free at last

(Cyril Karabus and Marius Fransman walk out of a door)

ANCHOR: After a seven month legal battle, a South African academic, held in the United Arab Emirates...

(Karabus, Fransman and others seated around a boardroom table)

ANCHOR: ...is finally coming home

(A graphic of a map with labels "United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia, Oman, Qatar, Abu Dhabi. Karabus picture, a phone icon)

Karabus speaking over the phone: Obviously I'm very happy about being acquitted. I want to see my family as soon as possible

(Karabus and Fransman walking into a room, with another man behind them, there are cheers, a South African cut out of the soccer mascot)

21 03 2013

ANCHOR: Welcome back you're watching the news at 7.

ANCHOR After a seven month legal battle South African paediatric oncologist, Professor Cyril Karabus, is a free man. A United Arab Emirates Court has found him not guilty on charges of manslaughter and fraud. Karabus was convicted in absentia in the UAE, in 2003 after the death of a three year old cancer patient.

(photo of Cyril Karabus)

JOURNALIST sentenced in absentia to three years in jail on charges of manslaughter and falsifying document

(Marius Fransman shakes Karabus hand and camera's flash and they interact, file, Marius can be heard saying "Welcome to South Africa)

JOURNALIST: charges the 77 year old Karabus was unaware of for over a decade until his arrest in Dubai in August last year. Since then he's been battling to clear his name

(A graphic of a map with labels "United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia, Oman, Qatar, Abu Dhabi. Karabus photo, a phone icon)

Karabus speaking over the phone: Obviously I'm very happy about being acquitted. I want to see my family as soon as possible, and it depends how quickly they let me out of here

(Footage of Fransman and Karabus around the table with other officials.)

JOURNALIST: It's been an emotional roller coaster for him and his family.

Michael Karabus – Son doing an interview at SABC studio: We are a little shell shocked, but elated over the moon. ..

(picture of Karabus and a child)

Michael Karabus: It's pretty much the first good day we've had in the last seven months of our journey.

Sarah Karabus – daughter doing an interview at SABC studio: We always knew he was innocent. We were hoping that things would go in the right direction.

(Footage of Fransman and Karabus around the table with other officials.)

JOURNALIST: Earlier this week a UAE medical committee absolved Karabus of all blame. Pretoria says it's pleased the matter has been resolved

Maite Nkoane-Mashabane – International Relations and Cooperation Minister giving a briefing with BRICS banner behind her: we would like to thank the UAE government for their understanding and their co-operation, and for the release of Professor Karabus

(Fransman and Karabus walking outside)

JOURNALIST: Karabus is expected home by next week

(a picture of a man, woman and baby)

JOURNALIST: and he'll meet a new addition to the family, his grandson, eight week old Gabriel

(Fransman and Karabus outside)

SOQ

28 03 2013

ANCHOR: The return of Cape Town paediatrician, Cyril Karabus, from the United Arab Emirates, after his acquittal this week in Abu Dhabi has suffered a major setback. His lawyer says he just receive notice that the government of the UAE will be appealing Karabus's acquittal on criminal charges. Dr Karabus...

(Karabus interacting with Marius Fransman, footage used before)

ANCHOR: was found guilty in absentia in 2003 for the death of a 3 year old child he treated more than a decade ago. This week a medical review committee found he had no case to answer. But now the UAE government says it's going to appeal and has not given a reason for its decision.

29 03 2013

ANCHOR: Cape Town oncologist, Professor Cyril Karabus, awaits his fate at the hands of the United Arab Emirates. The south African government is powerless to intervene. A UAE court acquitted Karabus of any wrongdoing in the death of a 3 year old patient in 2002. But his hope of returning home this weekend was dashed when the UAE government announced its intention to appeal.

(Karabus and Marius Fransman interacting, their interactions are slightly audible)

JOURNALIST: Nine days ago, on human rights day, Karabus was celebrating his freedom, but elation has turned into despair...

(people sitting around the table interacting at a home)

Cape Town

JOURNALIST: For his family hoping to have him home for his 78th birthday on Easter Monday, the news is devastating.

Michael Karabus – Son doing an interview inside a home, seated: We're gutted, all of us. This came out of left field completely. It was completely unexpected.

(Journalist in a room that looks like it belongs to a child with Michael and a woman seated next to him. The journalist is in shot)

JOURNALIST: The appeal process could take years.

Michael: Now there's another delay. The ninth of April was the next hearing. And only then, as far as I understand it, will they notify us as to what the basis of their appeal is. Then there'll be another delay for our team to go and prepare a defence

(Inside what looks like a conference. Delegates are seated at tables with their respective flags on display. Bigger flags next to the screen in front)

JOURNALIST: If the appeal is successful, Karabus faces a bleak future. South Africa is one of three countries in the world that does not have a prisoner transfer treaty with other nations. Mbulelo Bungane – Dept. Of International Relations doing an interview seated with a banner behind him about ROSA: We work in the arena of sovereign states, and we respect the sovereignty of each state, including its judicial processes and system.

(back to footage inside the conference room)

JOURNALIST: Pretoria cannot intervene when its citizens human rights are being violated.

(Footage inside what looks like women behind bars)

JOURNALIST: This means that guilty or innocent, all South Africans...

(women in chains)

JOURNALIST: incarcerated abroad are vulnerable

Sarah Karabus doing an interview seated in what looks like a child's room: If this can happen to my father it can happen to anybody

(Karabus and Fransman interacting, old footage)

JOURNALIST: Time is not on the side of the ailing professor

SOQ

4. De Doorns Bus Crash

15 03 2013

Headline 1: Major Investigation Launched

(wide shot bus lying on its side, a big truck, police vehicle and people working on the scene)

ANCHOR: A horrific bus accident in De Doorns...

(close-up of bus)

ANCHOR: that leaves at least 24 dead

(pans out to shot of the area)

Kenny Africa – Western Cape Traffic Chief: The vehicle's having problems with their brakes when they go into the sandpit so they can stop, but in this case the bus did not stop

(Rescue worker at work)

ANCHOR: Good evening. This is an early edition of the news at 7. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty. The death toll from one of the worst bus accidents in the Western Cape has risen to 24. The passengers, mostly women, were travelling from Secunda in Mpumalanga to Cape Town after attending a church gathering. It's understood the bus veered out of control after the brakes failed. The Atlantic Charter's bus...

(Graphic of Map of the Western Cape. Areas highlighted, De Doorns, Cape Town, a smaller version of a South African Map)

ANCHOR: crashed into the side of a mountain on the Hex river pass near De Doorns. The Western Cape Traffic department will investigate the legal status of the bus including the validity of the operating licence, and whether a roadworthy certificate was still valid.
(wide shot of area with rescue personnel at work, vehicle on its side)

ANCHOR: About 80 passengers boarded this ill-fated...
Western Cape – Hex River Pass

ANCHOR: ..liner from Mpumalanga. Earlier today it crashed into the side of this mountain. Emergency and rescue personnel rushed to the scene. Some were declared dead; others crushed or trapped inside the double decker bus. Two children were among the victims
(rescue personnel moving out bodies)

ANCHOR: Scores were rushed to a Worcester hospital. Eight, including three children, are critical. Others were airlifted to Cape Town. Poor brakes are believed to have caused the crash...

Kenny Africa – WC Chief Director (doing interview outside by the site of the crash): The vehicle's having problems with their brakes when they go into the sandpit so they can stop, but in this case the bus did not stop. It went through the rest of it, and the rear bumper of the bus came off, and he left that behind. And as he came down the pass, the second last turn before he gets out of the pass, the driver lost control
(personnel at work)

ANCHOR: Church leaders say they received calls about bus problems the night before the accident.

Dumisani Ximbi – 12 Apostle church in Christ (interview outside, on site,): I received a call early about 6 o'clock that the bus was stuck somewhere next to Beaufort West, because of oil or petrol. Then later at about 10 I received a call again that the bus is involved in an accident here in De Doorns
(rescue personnel moving bodies out, taken from above)

ANCHOR: The names of the deceased have not been released as their next of kin have not been notified. The owner of Atlantic Charters and Tours sent condolences to the families of the deceased, but declined to speak to the media at the scene. He will release a statement after consulting the company's lawyers.

(working with deceased)
SOQ

16 03 2013

Headline 1: Prolonged Agony
(group of people walking next to a fence)

ANCHOR: Family members have to wait longer as De Doorns bus victims can only be identified next week
(footage from bus crash)

Man speaking outside hospital or building: We want to view the bodies. According to pathologists, they said no
(footage from bush crash)

ANCHOR: A very good evening to you, and welcome to the news at 7. Families of the victims of yesterday's bus crash will have to wait until next week before they are allowed to identify their loved ones. They were turned away from a mortuary in Worcester today. State pathologists and morticians say they need more time to complete their work.
(Graphic of SA map. Cape Town is labelled, and there is a pin on it and Secunda)

ANCHOR: 24 passengers, mostly women and two children...
(3D graphic of crash site)

ANCHOR: were killed when their bus crashed against the side of a Hex River mountain. They were on route to Cape Town after a prayer meeting in Mpumalanga.
(People walk down the street)

ANCHOR: Seeking closure. Grieving family members arrived to identify their loved ones. But...
(gate closing)

ANCHOR:...they were told identification can only take place next week.
Dumisani Ximbi – Church leader (speaking outside hospital): Very, very disappointed. We're disappointed. I phoned one of the police, one of the generals that we want to view the bodies and he said he made an arrangement for us to come here. Yes he did it, but according to the pathologist they said no.
Jo-Anne Otto – Western Cape Health Department speaking outside the facility: The reason for the delay in identifying the bodies is so that we can prepare the bodies, and allow for our patients to be less traumatised by the identification process.
(personnel working at the site)

ANCHOR: At the crash site, traffic officials worked through the night to clear the wreckage. Survivors recalled the terrifying seconds before the bus slammed into the side of the mountain.

Black woman carrying a child, doing interview outside facility (Voice over) Nomute Zihlwele – Survivor: I was asleep when I woke up the bus was out of control. I prayed and grabbed my child and that's when the bus crashed. Siziwe Khafula – Survivor (voice over): I lost consciousness just as there was a loud bang. When I came to, the bus had crashed. People were lying dead next to me
(group of people in hall. Sitting)
Last night: Gugulethu

ANCHOR: while survivors were being treated in the Worcester hospital, an emotional vigil was held in Khayelitsha last night
Ximbi in hall with other men around him: As far as I know the police and other members are still trying to piece together, so we can identify those people. We don't know who are dead, but we know the number
(back at initial crash site)
ANCHOR: Shortly before the crash, traffic official stopped the bus...
(group of traffic officials)

ANCHOR: at Beaufort West for a routing check.

(work underway at crash site)

The bus company Atlantic Charters and Tours, says it will co-operate with the investigation

(wide shot of the crash)

SOQ

17 03 2013

ANCHOR: A mass church service has been held for the 24 De Doorns bus crash victims.

Families of the deceased are expected to start identifying their loved ones tomorrow.

(church members singing. Women wearing all white, while men in suits)

Cape Town – Khayelitsha

ANCHOR: An emotional service. 23 of the victims belonged to this church

(footage of a man interacting with other men. He is the only one facing the camera)

ANCHOR: Among the mourners, Sonwabo Ndyatyi. He lost his wife and sister in the accident

Sonwabo Ndyoki – Mourner speaking outside doing an interview: As our family we feel bad.

But so far now we've accepted as it is because everything there came from God

Last night

(singing people; one woman faints, others help her)

ANCHOR: a similar service was held last night.

(Footage of clothes, shoes, blankets, pillows etc. on display)

ANCHOR: clothing and other items recovered from the crash were laid out for identification

(Old footage of the crash, rescue personnel working)

ANCHOR: investigations are on-going

Hex River Pass – Near De Doorns

ANCHOR: Provincial traffic officials...

(image of officials gathered)

ANCHOR: say it could be known by tomorrow whether the accident was caused by driver of mechanical error

(stretch of road with taxi driving by)

ANCHOR: It's an infamous stretch of road. Two years ago a similar accident claimed 23 lives after a bus overturned.

(staff cleaning road)

SOQ

18 03 2013

ANCHOR: Family and friends of the 24 bus crash victims began identifying their loved ones today. The group of nearly 50 people travelled to the Worcester pathology lab this morning. 2 children, 20 women and 2 men died when the bus overturned in the Hex River Pass
(family members standing in a prayerful disposition)

Western Cape – Khayelitsha

ANCHOR: Lindeka Zilindlovu only found out yesterday the her cousin...
(woman walking to the hospital)

ANCHOR: Boniswa Kodwa was in the accident. She's hoping to find her cousin alive. Lindeka Zilindlovu – Relative doing an interview outside with another woman standing beside her voice over: We checked the hospital. They couldn't find her. We asked them to check with other hospitals like Tygerberg. She's not in the system, and now we are going back to the mortuary to check again.
(man comes out of gate crying, another with his arms around his shoulder, and some others behind them)

ANCHOR: by two this afternoon only 7 bodies had been...
(close up of woman sitting in car crying)

ANCHOR: had been positively identified. It was not an easy process. Some of them were disfigured.
(people walking out of gate)

ANCHOR: Ncebakazi Tiya had to identify her sister, Babalwa Mbele.
(sign written Worcester Forensic Pathology Laboratory in English, Afrikaans and Xhosa)

ANCHOR: Mbele was a nurse and mother of three
Ncebakazi Tiya – Relative doing interview outside. Surrounded by community members: I was hoping that I could get her in hospital, even if it's in ICU
(visuals from crash site with bus on its side)

ANCHOR: the road accident fund is assisting families with claims.
(personnel at work)

ANCHOR: Meanwhile the Western Cape Transport department says it is probing driver error and the roadworthiness of the bus. The provincial transport ministry says the outcome of the probe will be released later this week.

SOQ

21 03 2013

ANCHOR: President Zuma says authorities will clamp down on those who break traffic laws. And a complete ban on alcohol on the roads is on the cards. The president addressed mourners at a memorial service for the 24 De Doorns bus accident victims.

(Mourners in church clothes singing and dancing, others in normal clothes)

Cape Town - Khayelitsha

ANCHOR: Hundreds of congregants of the Twelve Apostolic Church in Christ in Khayelitsha, paying their respects. The president said the accident had shocked the nation

Zuma speaking from podium outside (no label): The government shares your sorrow. Your grief is our grief.
(Church mourners)

ANCHOR: And ahead of the Easter exodus and notoriously high accident rate, and appeal to road users to exercise caution to avoid a repeat of the De Doorns tragedy, and a timeous warning...

Zuma speaking from the podium: various government departments are considering banning alcohol advertisements...

(church mourners)

Zuma: and their consideration of the current alcohol limit, which allows people to drive after taking a limited amount of alcohol.

(people preaching)

ANCHOR: the De Doorns victims are expected to be laid to rest on Saturday.

SOQ

22 03 2013

ANCHOR: Another prayer service was held in Khayelitsha for the 24 victims of last week's bus accident near De Doorns in the Western Cape. The church members were returning from Secunda when their bus overturned in the Hex River Pass.

(congregants at a service held in a tent)

Cape Town: Khayelitsha

ANCHOR: Survivors of the horror crash were among those in attendance today. All 24 victims were identified on Monday. A mass funeral service will be held tomorrow, and burials are planned for next week. Meanwhile the outcome of the investigation into the crash is expected soon.

23 03 2013

ANCHOR: A symbolic mass funeral has been held for the 24 victims of a Western Cape bus accident. The members of the Twelve Apostles church were killed a week ago when their bus crashed at the Hex River Pass.

(Two injured women walk together on stadium field)

Cape Town: Khayelitsha

ANCHOR: Nomalungisa Joka is a survivor of the Hex River Bus crash. She joined hundreds of other church goers...

(coffins lying side by side, and members of the congregation on the field)

ANCHOR: In paying her last respects. But Joka still has many unanswered questions about the accident

Nomalungisa Joka – Survivor doing interview outside: I'm happy about this day, but I'm scared because I don't know what to do now and I'm asking God to give me that power, to give me that strength, to praise and to call all the people of God, all the people of the nation to be in one place.

(footage from crash)

ANCHOR: It's believed the brakes of the double decker bus they were travelling in malfunctioned. The driver lost control, and collided with the side of the mountain. They were on their way back from a church meeting in Mpumalanga.

Sonwabo Ndyoki – Grieving Family Member doing an interview outside. Voice over: We were sad but we're now stronger because we know they've gone to a better place.

Dumisani Ximbi – Church leader: The president of the TACC, the chief apostle, the leader of the twelve apostle church in Christ, he is one who is able to take those souls to God in belief.

(Crosses leaning against the coffins, with the names of the respective deceased, pans out to reveal the church members and rest of stadium)

ANCHOR: One of the victims was laid to rest in Stellenbosch. The other bodies will be returned to mortuary, and will then be transported to the Eastern Cape where they will be buried

SOQ

Hugo Chavez

08 03 2013

Hugo Chavez Funeral

Headline 3: Rest in peace Mr President

Opens with footage of crowd in red, some carrying flags

ANCHOR: An emotional farewell *(still picture of Chavez giving a salute)* for a beloved president *(crowds walking)* thousands attend the funeral *(pictures from funeral, including dignitaries and ordinary people paying their last respects and mourning)* of Venezuela's Hugo Chavez

More than 55 world leaders gathered in Caracas today to join throngs of mourners for the state funeral of Venezuela's president, Hugo Chavez. Chavez died on Tuesday after a two year battle with cancer. He was 58. His policies in oil wealth made him a hero to Venezuela's poor. State leaders stood as guards of honour...

(crowd of people wearing red)

JOURNALIST: a lavish and...

(cuts to picture of queue of people walking)

JOURNALIST: emotionally charged funeral for a leader

(cuts to picture of Chavez in suit, saluting)

JOURNALIST: worshiped by millions of Venezuelans...

(Cuts to picture of dignitaries; symbol indicating it has been obtained from Venezuela TV)

JOURNALIST: World leaders, including Cuba's Raul Castro, Iran's Mahmoud Ahmadinejad...

(Camera cuts to picture of Ahmadinejad and Lukashenko walking in; from Venezuela TV)

JOURNALIST: And Russia's Alexander Lukashenko are attending the funeral

(Cut to picture of big white building with banners with Chavez face)

JOURNALIST: Chavez's death...

(Zoom into one of the Banners with Chavez's face, building still in the background)

JOURNALIST ...has devastated millions of Venezuelans.

(Camera cuts to image of law enforcement officials around civilians with a gate to cordon off an area we're not sure of)

JOURNALIST: His funeral is likely to be one of the biggest gatherings of...

(Zoom into children sitting on a canon sculpture)

Journalist: respect for an important...

(Mourners paying their last respects above his coffin, doing symbol of a cross)

JOURNALIST: world figure. The government says more than 2 million people have filed past his coffin since Wednesday. People blew him kisses, making the sign of the cross or gave planetary salutes as they walked by...

(Different angle of the shot of people walking by to pay their last respects. This time it was a soldier visible who is standing by.)

JOURNALIST: with just seconds to see him. Many...

(cut to different angle of queue)

JOURNALIST: Many stood in line patiently as they waited for a chance to pay their last respects. Vice president Nicholas Maduro, Chavez's handpicked successor, will be sworn in...

(military now shown paying their last respects)

JOURNALIST: as acting president after the funeral. An elections...

(cut to people filing by outside)

JOURNALIST: is then due within thirty days

(Crowd carrying Chavez Memorabilia and posters)

JOURNALIST: Maduro is expected to face opposition from candidate, Henrique Capriles, who's a young centralist

(Images from file of Chavez on stage with four other people, playing an imaginary guitar)

JOURNALIST: ..governor who lost to Chavez last October.

10 03 2013

ANCHOR: Here at home a memorial service for the late Venezuelan President, Hugo Chavez was held in Johannesburg today. Chavez, who died last week after a 2 year long battle with cancer, won the respect of millions of Venezuelans during his four year rule.

(a man standing at the podium in the back ground a portion of the SACP flag) Long live Hugo Chavez Long live. *(Crowd responds)* Long live

(A hall with people mainly wearing red. A few dignitaries on the stage. Banners with Hugo Chavez face and an SACP banner)

Johannesburg

JOURNALIST: Hailed as a hero for the poor

(cut to portion of a banner which reads "Remembering Hugo Chavez")

JOURNALIST: the former Venezuelan president was honoured and lauded...

(Cut to faces of people in the crowd. A number are wearing SACP T-shirts. Occasionally raise fists in the air)

JOURNALIST: for his visionary leadership and commitment to the social struggles of the less fortunate)

(Solly Mapaille: SACP): We must not look swollen. We must not look dejected. We must feel more inspired by his example. The example that achieves. The example that lives forever. The example that is a beacon for socialist struggles today and tomorrow

(close-up of banner with Chavez face) For us in the communist party

(back to Mapaile on podium) We lost a front line combatant in the struggle for socialism. We lost a great example. We know that for him revolution, and loyalty to the revolution was like religion.

(cut to picture of Chavez in suite, giving a salute)

JOURNALIST: Chavez was celebrated for...

(cut to another picture of Chavez, this time dressed in red, with a beret raising both arms, giving an address from the podium with a red background and a multi-coloured heart with a star)

JOURNALIST: his country's vast oil to offer...

(cut to graffiti on a public wall with bold white letters and a red background – CHAVEZ)

JOURNALIST: subsidised food, free health care and education...

(at Chavez funeral, mourners cheer and clap, coffin visible, dignitaries visible)

JOURNALIST: to Venezuela. Elections will be held on April 14th...

(close-up of coffin)

JOURNALIST: to find his successor. With little campaign time before the election

(acting president of Venezuela, Nicholas Maduro laying a sword on the coffin)

JOURNALIST: ...acting president Nicolas Maduro of cashing in on an emotional outpouring following Chavez's death

(people on the streets with flags)

JOURNALIST: He'll likely run against...

(Cut to a picture of a man working with boxes, assumed to be opposition leader)

JOURNALIST: ...opposition leader, Henrique Capriles, who lost to Chavez in October

(Zoom out of the man behind box to show other people gathering around him, cheering him on)

JOURNALIST: Politicians have until tomorrow to register as candidates

(Crowds cheering and singing at night)

JOURNALIST: observers voice mounting concern about the political divide gripping Venezuela.

(zoom into woman singing passionately and crying)

JOURNALIST: With half the country in a near frenzy of adulation...

(group of people wearing maroon and caps)

JOURNALIST: and the other feeling targeted

SOQ

6. Human Rights Day

21 03 2013

ANCHOR: A very good evening to you and welcome to the news at 7. I'm Natasha Thorp.

Human rights day was commemorated in diverse ways across the country. From street name changes and the formation of a new political party to reburials and rallies. Yet agreement remains that much more needs to be done to instil a human rights culture in South Africa. Violence against women and children, police brutality and xenophobia are just some of the concerns raised. President Jacob Zuma says civil and political rights mean nothing if socio-economic rights are not attainable. He delivered the keynote human rights day address in Mbokweni Paarl.

Western Cape – Mbekweni, Paarl

(People standing, sitting, and dancing)

JOURNALIST: The government is striving to promote socio-economic rights...

(fade to dignitaries on stage, including Zuma at podium, Jeff Radebe, Marius Fransman, another minister, behind them a banner of government, can see people 's heads below, some are carrying small SA flags and waving them)

JOURNALIST: But the president says attaining this is not easy given the country's past. He says the legacy of apartheid is still prevalent in many communities

(close-up of Zuma at podium)

Zuma: This is a fact, and the legacy cannot be reversed...

(wide shot of hall)

Zuma: ...overnight. We will continue doing our best, in spite of the challenges that we face.

We will not rest until every household has water, electricity, sanitation, and other services

(mid shot of stage with dignitaries)

JOURNALIST: President Zuma lamented recent incidents involving the police

(mid shot with Zuma on podium)

Zuma: we have directed that the SAPS code of conduct, in which an ethos of human rights if firmly entrenched be promoted amongst all police officials. They must live, breath and personify the police code of conduct

(shot of people sitting in stands)

JOURNALIST: and he said crimes against women and children...

(close up of woman in the audience)

JOURNALIST: remain a serious problem. This was also the focus of various opposition parties

(mid shot of people sitting on stands)

JOURNALIST: While many applauded steps already taken to advance human rights in South Africa

(close-up with labour minister, Mildred Oliphant)

JOURNALIST: ...most parties said a lot more needed to be done.

SOQ

ANCHOR: Political parties also commemorated human rights day, formerly known as Sharpeville day.

(iconic pictures of Sharpeville massacre on a screen next to a red curtain, one is a line of coffins)

JOURNALIST: On this day in 1960, police opened fire on 5000 protestors in Sharpeville, killing 69. They were holding a peaceful protest...

(Zoom in on picture with people lying on the ground)

JOURNALIST: ...against pass laws.

(Zille on a podium wearing a blue shirt)

JOURNALIST: The DA says all South Africans have the right to protest peacefully...

(crowd of people wearing DA shirts)

JOURNALIST: ..and have that right defended by the police.

Helen Zille – DA Leader doing an interview outside with people behind her: Today those rights are in our constitution, and we should be able to take them for granted. But tragically we're seeing human rights abuses again perpetrated by the police in various places. So we will never rest. We will continue to defend our rights and this constitution

(Groups of people with a red banner, outside. Dignitaries sitting on a slightly elevated portion)

JOURNALIST: The Langa victims were also remembers...

Cape Town – Langa

JOURNALIST: Six people were killed, and 26 injured...

(front shot of panellists show flags written "Congress of Azania, a map,)

JOURNALIST: ...during clashes between police and residents.

Phillip Kgosana – PAC doing interview outside, journalist in shot: The struggle we started 53 years ago is not over, and our people must work hard to do it.

(people sitting in stands, wearing various colours)

JOURNALIST: In Durban...

Durban

JOURNALIST: A call for stronger action against those who abuse women and young children. Premier Zweli Mkhize...

(a man, assumed to be, standing at podium with provincial emblem, and a South African flag next to him, as well as a sign language interpreter and a banner behind him)

JOURNALIST: called for stiffer sentences against perpetrators of sex crimes

(People in a tent, a significant number in yellow shirts. Some sitting, some dancing)

JOURNALIST: Cope's leader addressed supporters at a Rustenburg Informal settlement

North West – Rustenburg

(Camera pans through crowds to reveal a wide shot with the COPE emblem)

JOURNALIST: He said there was a regression in the protection of human rights

Mosiua Lekota – COPE PRESIDENT doing an interview outside with someone carrying an umbrella over him, flagged by community members, including children and youth: The children of this country are being denied the quality education they deserve. But nothing is more glaring. Nothing is more glaring than how the individual human rights are being trampled underfoot by this government

(crowd of people outside, carrying umbrellas wearing yellow UDM shirts, singing, dancing, standing)

JOURNALIST: and near the Marikana koppie thousands of mineworkers welcomed the UDM leader

(Holomisa addressing from podium)

Bantu Holomisa – UDM: What happened here is a stark reminder of how easily human rights are infringed upon. It is unfortunate that the voices of the people are so suppressed, and not only in Marikana, but in other parts of the country...

(people sitting on electric thing in their yellow shirts, pans out to reveal the crowds)

JOURNALIST: Across the board, commitments to do more to respect human rights

SOQ

ANCHOR: Meanwhile many journeyed back to Sharpeville today to remember

(group of people walking, carrying an AZAPO flag, singing)

Sharpeville

JOURNALIST: Commemorating the heroes and heroines of 1960

(marching past the camera toy-toying and singing)

(women standing by stones with flowers)

JOURNALIST: This is the memorial site that honours the fallen 69

(women shot from the bottom, a towering figure)

(close up of a bunch of flowers)

JOURNALIST: 53 years on the pain...

(A shot from above of a woman whose head is above a plaque written "Phutheho, John, 20". She is carrying flowers and is looking straight ahead)

JOURNALIST: ... is still evident

An unidentified man does an interview outside at the site; the journalist is still in shot. Voice over: it brings back painful memories about how my brother was shot, and how he lay on the floor

(close up of an elderly woman wiping her nose with a handkerchief, pan out to reveal DA leader, Lindiwe Mazibuko also wiping what appears to be tears from her eyes)

JOURNALIST: A sad day too for those who witnessed the tragedy

The elderly woman does an interview. Voice over: When I arrived home I heard gun shots, and I went back to see what happened at the police station. People were lying everywhere. God helped because I was at the police station.

(elderly woman standing next to memorial structure)

JOURNALIST: For these people the scars remain

(wide shot of a number of women standing next to their respective memorial structures)

JOURNALIST: ...and many are still waiting for a country...

(A priest is carrying a bouquet of flowers. Other priests nearby. Outside. With community also visible. Some on the premises, others waiting outside the fence)

JOURNALIST: where human rights are fulfilled and respected

(group of journalists and camera people)

SOQ

ANCHOR: And in remembrance of struggle icons the City of Cape Town has remained some of its streets and a civic centre in their honour.

(Musicians, playing on stage, including a xylophone)

Western Cape – Cape Town

JOURNALIST: A ceremony giving anti-apartheid activists...

(close up shot of a banner with Walter Sisulu's face and label, then pans out to reveal other similar banners on Govan Mbeki, Robert Sobukwe, etc.)

J...pride of place in the mother city. Honoured for their self-less sacrifice

(cars driving around outside, pans to a street sign written Coen Steytler)

JOURNALIST: Coen Steytler Avenue passing the international convention centre...

(picture of Walter Sisulu with dates 1912 – 2003, taken from screen)

JOURNALIST: ...will be named Walter Sisulu Avenue.

(street sign with Modderdam Road, Bellville, Cape Town International, Belhar, a set of traffic lights, pans out to reveal stretch of roads with cars driving past)

JOURNALIST: Modderdam Road connecting some of the city's suburbs with the N2...

(picture of a man pointing, no label)

JOURNALIST: will be known as Robert Sobukwe road

Otua Sobukwe-Whyte – Granddaughter doing an interview outside: We're so honoured to be a part of this. My grandfather is being remembered. The things that he did years ago, but it's still very present today, and I'm especially proud of him as his granddaughter, and it's just been an honour to speak about it and just be part of this experience

(wide shot of stadium with dignitaries seated, and screens above)

JOURNALIST: Landsdown Road, one of the longest in the city will honour...

(picture of Imam Abdullah Haron 1923 – 1969)

JOURNALIST: Imam Abdullar Haron

(picture of Japhta "Bra Jeff" Masemola 1928 – 1990)

JOURNALIST: Japhta Masemola

(picture of a man with no label)

JOURNALIST: and Govan Mbeki

Linda Mbeki – Granddaughter doing interview outside: I was very close to my grandfather and he loved his grandchildren and girl grandchildren and he wanted the best for our future, and I don't think he would want anyone's daughter to be raped or beaten

(street signs with cars driving past and traffic lights)

JOURNALIST: Hendreick Verwoerd drive becomes Uys Krige drive

(picture of Dulcie September 1935 – 1988)

JOURNALIST: while Dulcie September will be honoured by the renaming of the Athlone Civic centre

(model with the various street names)

JOURNALIST: SOQ

ANCHOR: To the North-West now, where human rights day was commemorated by restoring the dignity of a farm-worker who died 13 years ago.

(graphic of North-West with labels for Lichtenburg, Stilfontein, Ottosdal, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, and a small map of South Africa)

The owner of Lillesland farm near Lichtenburg refused permission for Madepeng Sebone's family to bury him on the farm where he worked today Sebone's remains were buried on a government owned farm near Stilfontein.

(People at a funeral)

JOURNALIST: Finally closure for a distraught family

(wide shot of a street with a tent on the side, some feather banners and parked cars)

North West – Lilliespan Farm Near Lichtenburg

JOURNALIST: They were forced to bury their loved one...

(a cordoned off area with a hole and a blanket near the side of the road)

JOURNALIST:...on the side of the farm road

(coffin going underground)

JOURNALIST: Today, a dignified farewell...

(A black and white picture of a man)

JOURNALIST: Sebone's remains were exhumed...

(men using spades to fill ground, people watch)

JOURNALIST:...and reburied at Bekshoekie farm

Albert Serole – Son of the Deceased doing an interview near to where funeral is taking place (voice over): We are happy as a family. But our concern is that many of us are poor, and we don't have houses.

(people sitting inside small tent at burial site, photo of deceased is visible, camera pans to close up of government officials)

JOURNALIST: Government has promised to prioritise the post settlement support...

(people at funeral)

JOURNALIST: for beneficiaries of land restitution

(Uncovering of tombstone written "In memory of Maruping Simon Serole Born 03 June 1948 Died 19 January 1999 Buried 13 February 1999 Reburied 21 March 2013 Robalaka Kagiso)

SOQ

7. Kenya Elections

08 03 2013

ANCHOR: The anxious wait for Kenyan's continues. The country is yet to know who will be the president between Prime Minister, Raila Odinga and Uhuru Kenyatta. The race is down to the wire with Kenyatta leading with 5.1 million of the total votes cast against Odinga's 4.5 million votes. The winner must garner over 50% of all votes cast, meaning the votes must be counted to the last man who voted on Monday.

(someone standing over podium reading results while a sign language interpreter interprets behind a banner that reads "2013 National Election Centre)

Announcer: Uhuru Kenyatta (continues speaking in the background while voice over journalist fades over...

JOURNALIST: Another day in Kenya's electoral tallying process

Kenya: Nairobi

(Image of a ballot paper like figure with results next to it...)

JOURNALIST: The Numbers, slow in coming in.

(back to someone standing over podium reading results while a sign language interpreter interprets behind a banner that reads "2013 National Election Centre)

JOURNALIST: And an admittedly cautious electoral commission

CEO IEC (James Oswago) *(speaking from the podium)* It combines two things, the need for expeditious disposal of the load of work before us, and also the need for diligence and the correct disposition for the work.

(James walks off the podium, someone else walks up but doesn't say anything)

JOURNALIST: the commission had promised Friday as the day the results would be announced.

(People sitting in a hall, probably electoral observers)

JOURNALIST: Anxious politicians, and Kenyans filled the national tally centre

(Zooms in on two men (black and white) interacting in the hall)

Journalist: As it turned out...

Chairman IEBC: Issack Hassan *(speaking from podium)*: Sometimes you plan things, and they don't go according to your plans

(cut to Kenyans on the street)

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile in the Capital, Nairobi, the High Court dismissed a petition signed by a local civil society organisation...

(Electoral workers arranging voting pages)

(A hand of someone going through a ballot paper)

JOURNALIST: Seeking to stop the tallying of the votes. The civil society organisation had raised issues...

(cuts to a press briefing by a large political contingent)

JOURNALIST: similar to those of Raila Odinga's party, that the tallying process was not credible.

(Cut to journalist reporting live on the field, with national election centre in the background)

JOURNALIST: Kenyans went to the polls on Monday to elect six representatives, including the president. While they now know who will represent them in the other five positions, the question of who will now take the most coveted seat in the country – that of the President – remains unanswered

SOQ

09 03 2013

Headline 1: Race Over

Chairman of IEBC (*addressing from podium*): I therefore declare Uhuru Kenyatta, the duly elected president

(*shot of celebrating crowds and officials*)

ANCHOR: Kenya has a new president but...

(*cut to shot of Odinga giving an address elsewhere, flagged by his supporters, courtesy of Citizen TV*)

ANCHOR: ...threatens court action...

ANCHOR: Kenya's deputy president, Uhuru Kenyatta, has been announced as the winner of the country's presidential election. Kenyatta won 50.07% of the votes cast, managing to avoid a second run off in the election. His main challenger, Raila Odinga, has promised to mount a court challenge against the outcome.

(*Elderly people at the polls*)

Kenya: Nairobi

JOURNALIST: It has been dubbed Kenya's most complex election

(*cut to 2013 Electoral centre with someone giving an address, and a sign language interpreter interpreting*)

JOURNALIST: For days Kenyans...

(IEBC logo – Your vote, Your Future – Independent Electoral And Boundaries Commission)

JOURNALIST: ...and indeed the world waited to know just who would be

(*hall full of people*)

JOURNALIST: the country's fourth president

IEBC Chairman address (Issack Hassan): Uhuru Kenyatta 6173433

(*crowds cheer*)

Hassan: I therefore declare Uhuru Kenyatta the duly elected president of the republic of Kenya

(*people popping open champagne, walking down stairs*)

JOURNALIST: this is the man, Uhuru Kenyatta, son of Kenya's first president. The man who also with vice president-elect

(*cuts to image of a man standing next to a Kenyan flag with a woman next to him, camera pans and also shows Kenyatta*)

JOURNALIST: William Ruto, are facing charges at the International Criminals Court, for crimes against humanity allegedly committed after the 2007 general elections.

(*Supporter celebrating on the streets*)

JOURNALIST: Among his supporters, jubilation in the air. They poured throughout the streets at dawn and celebrated throughout Saturday.

(*Raila Odinga and his entourage walk onto the podium to give an address*)

Journalist: One man, is, however, not satisfied with the outcome, Prime Minister, Raila Odinga.

(*wide shot of Odinga and his group*)

JOURNALIST: Odinga says the process lacked integrity, and that the voter's roll was doctored.

(*Zoom into Odinga's face, his voice a little audible*)

JOURNALIST: He, however, fell short of comparing this year's election to that of 2007. Odinga is not conceding just yet.

Odinga giving address from podium:

(Raila Odinga: Prime Minister: Kenya): We will therefore shortly move to court to challenge the outcome that the IEBC announced a few hours ago

(*Electoral centre where IEBC chairman shakes hands with Kenyatta, and dignitaries applaud in the background, shows off a document, crowds cheer louder*)

JOURNALIST: Kenyatta has extended an olive branch to Odinga and promised to work with his opponents.

PTC by JOURNALIST. City behind her: Uhuru Kenyatta has been officially declared the president elect of Kenya. However, the decision of when he will take oath of office depends on the outcome of the court case now filed by Prime Minister, Raila Odinga, in the Kenyan Courts.

SOQ

11 03 2013

Break

ANCHOR: Welcome back. You're watching the news at 7. The next two weeks will be crucial for Kenya. It's during this time that Prime Minister; Raila Odinga's party must file a petition challenging the outcome of last week's election. They, however, accuse the electoral commission of denying them information crucial to completing their petition.

(crowd outside cheering, carrying Odinga posters)

Kenya: Nairobi

JOURNALIST: Exactly a week since Kenyans went to the polls. Odinga's supporters held protests...

(man standing behind gate using a loud hailer)

JOURNALIST: outside the Kenyan supreme court, where he is expected to challenge the election results.

Mutula Kilonzo – Odinga Counsel (giving briefing): One of our obstacles is that we have demanded certain information from the IEBC and that information is not yet forthcoming.

(pans out and shows other people on panel)

JOURNALIST: The team has seven days to file

(image of the Supreme Court of Kenya)

JOURNALIST: The court must then rule on the petition within two weeks.

(Journalist talking to someone)

JOURNALIST: Members of Kenya's civil society are also launching a court bid.

Maina Kiai – Human Rights Lawyer: We are challenging the process. We are challenging the system. We will give evidence where we have...just pure mathematical. Pure mathematical. It could not have been what it is there.

(footage of supreme court)

JOURNALIST: Besides the legal hurdles in Kenya...

(Kenyatta at a jubilant address)

JOURNALIST: Uhuru Kenyatta and vice president-elect Ruto, are facing charges at the international criminal court at the Hague.

(footage of woman giving a briefing)

JOURNALIST: The ICC on Monday dropped charges against one of Uhuru's co-accused

(footage of an elderly man smiling)

JOURNALIST: former head of civil service, Francis Muhawura

(Kenyatta voting)

JOURNALIST: Not much relief for Kenyatta, as the court announced that it had fresh evidence against him

(footage outside supreme court)

SOQ

22 03 2013

ANCHOR: Kenya's defence forces on Friday bid farewell to Mwai Kibaki, as the commander in chief, as he edges closer retirement. President elect, Uhuru Kenyatta, on the other hand, is said to be at the advanced stages of unveiling his cabinet. That's if the Supreme Court clears the way, following a petition, challenging his declaration as winner of the country's presidential polls.

(military man marching alongside Mwai Kibaki, band music playing, other army officials standing in line, visible in a blurry picture)

Kenya

JOURNALIST: After 10 years as Kenya's commander in Chief...

(group of army officials marching, led by someone carrying a Kenyan flag)

JOURNALIST: It is time to retire

(Kibaki standing with army officials around him)

JOURNALIST: Mwai Kibaki, Kenya's third president...

(group of army officials with flags behind them)

JOURNALIST: on Friday attended a farewell parade

(Kibaki and two army officials walk in between two rows of soldiers)

JOURNALIST: mounted by the Kenya defence forces, inspecting the guard of honour...

(getting a wrapped present from people dressed in army gear)

JOURNALIST: and receiving retirement gifts.

(Close up of Kibaki's face)

JOURNALIST: Not lost on his mine, the politics of the day

Mwai Kibaki – President: Kenya giving an address from the podium outside with an army official standing behind him and others seated: We recently held an historic general election. And I call upon our men and women...

(army officials listening to address)

30 03 2013

Headline 2: Kenya's election results upheld

(judge leaving court)

ANCHOR: Kenya's supreme court...

(Uhuru Kenyatta casting vote, flagged by a few people)

JOURNALIST: gives the go ahead for Uhuru Kenyatta to be sworn in as president

ANCHOR: To Kenya now, defeated presidential candidate Raila Odinga, says he accepts the Supreme Court's ruling, that upholds the election win of Uhuru Kenyatta. The court was unanimous in its decision. Shortly after the ruling, police clashed with hundreds of stone-throwing Odinga supporters in the Western City of Kisumu. Police confirmed two people had been shot.

(Graphic with photos of Kenyatta and Odinga. In the background is the hand of someone casting their vote. Under Kenyatta's picture is 50.07%. Under Odinga is 43.28%)

ANCHOR: Kenya's outgoing president, who has consistently appealed for calm, lost the March 4 poll by a small margin, claiming technical problems and widespread rigging.

(A group of people, some carrying Kenyan flags, gathered and singing, soldiers standing guard with a plastic shield. Some men sit in front of group)

Kenya – Nairobi

JOURNALIST: A Few minutes before the ruling, crowds of Odinga supporters...

(inside court)

JOURNALIST: danced in front of the Supreme Court demanding justice. And when the time for the ruling came...

Dr Willin Mutunga – Chief Justice, Kenya Reading from the bench: As to whether the third and fourth respondents were validly elected, and declared president-elect, and deputy president elect of the Republic of Kenya respectively, by the second respondent in the presidential elections held on the 4th March 2013, it is the decision of the court that the third and fourth respondents were validly elected.

(Odinga addressing crowd, footage from a previous press conference)

JOURNALIST :Odinga and a civil society had challenged the electoral commission's declaration of Kenyatta...

(reading of winners by commission, footage from past event)

JOURNALIST: as winner of the hotly contested polls.

(in court)

JOURNALIST: they argued the process was marred a number of irregularities, including failure of the tally- system. The judges' decision was unanimous.

Chief justice reading from the bench: It is the decision of the court that the said elections were indeed conducted in compliance with the constitution under law.

(soldiers standing guard, a group of people also outside the court)

JOURNALIST: Security was tight in and around the Supreme Court

(Soldiers with plastic shields)

JOURNALIST: Police having issued strict orders...

(groups of people some seated, others standing)

JOURNALIST: against protests or celebrations.

31 03 2013

ANCHOR: Kenya's president, Uhuru Kenyatta, has pledged to unite the East African nation. Yesterday the supreme court upheld his election as the country's fourth president. While rioting continued for a second day in the Western town of Kisumu, Prime Minister, Raila Odinga's hometown.

(footage from inside court)

Kenya

(zoom into one of the judges reading the ruling)

JOURNALIST: A ruling watched with keen interest around the globe

Dr Willy Mugunga – Kenya Chief Justice Reading ruling from the bench: It is the decision of the court: It is the decision of the court that the third and fourth respondents were validly elected.

(footage from outside, on the street)

JOURNALIST: No doubt, a sigh of relief from neighbouring countries. Kenya is a regional economic powerhouse

(a group of protestors gathered)

JOURNALIST: Rioting continued unabated in Kisumu. On Saturday two people were killed by police and shops were looted in the town

(footage of Kenyatta in church)

JOURNALIST: At an Easter Sunday church service...

(Uhuru at the church podium)

JOURNALIST: Kenyatta reached out to Kenyans...

(people seated in church)

JOURNALIST: From both sides of the political divide

Uhuru Kenyatta – Kenyan President gives an address from a podium in church: As we now leave the elections behind us, and move towards reconciling our nation, bringing our people together, so that we can all work together for the better of this nation

(footage from inside court)

JOURNALIST: With a peaceful election and disputes resolved legally

(footage from outside)

JOURNALIST: Kenyans now seem determined to avoid a repeat of the 2007 post electoral violence.

(footage of Kenyatta walking in church to take communion)

JOURNALIST: Kenyatta, the country's richest man, has the unenviable task of uniting the country's divided ethnical communities

(people greeting outside church_

SOQ

8. Marikana

ANCHOR: The Marikana Commission of Inquiry has heard striking mine workers used muti made from human tongue and chin from one of the security guards killed at the Lonmin mine on August 12th. The human remains were mixed with sheep. The muti apparently made the workers believe they were invincible, when they clashed with police. This emerged during the cross-examination of mineworker, Mzoxolo Madikwana.

(visuals on screen of recording from Marikana massacre being show to the commission, heading at top: Rituals observed by SAOS on arrival, also a SAPS logo in the corner, the voice of someone explaining in the background)

JOURNALIST: It's not the first the commission of inquiry...

North West: Rustenburg

JOURNALIST: has heard evidence of alleged muti rituals...

(miners with traditional weapons)

JOURNALIST: ..performed by the sons of Sangoma on the koppie. On Monday police lawyers told a chilling tale of how mine workers allegedly collected ingredients...

(back to recorded footage)

JOURNALIST: ...for the muti from one of the Lonmin security guards who was overpowered and killed

(a man sits with his hands on his chin, listening)

(someone reading, label reads "Vuyani Ngalwana – Advocate Representing SAPS) the chin and the tongue of a security guard was cut out by your group

(camera cuts to show face of lawyers and the one asking the question) Would care to comment?

(Respondent replies in Xhosa, camera doesn't immediately pan to him. Camera still on lawyers Someone translates): I'm hearing for the first time about the things you are saying...

Mzoxolo Madigiwana: Lonmin General Worker

Lawyer reads again: The Sangoma told the group that the human tissue and the blood...

(cuts to the miner)

Lawyer: ...from the security guard, would be mixed together with the muti so that it can make a much stronger muti.

(cuts to lawyer, closer)

Lawyer: It would be impossible for the bullets to penetrate the body

(cuts to miner, who chuckles)

JOURNALIST: Madigiwana asked if advocate Ngalwana was telling him a tall tale.

(cuts to lawyer)

JOURNALIST: Ngalwana said police would call a witness, known as Mr X to testify to these facts

(cuts to miner)

JOURNALIST: Madigiwana later told the commission that...

(cuts to footage from massacre, journalist running in front of shot, police vehicle, policemen standing in a line gearing up to shoot, then move forward)

JOURNALIST: ...at least two journalists saw how he was assaulted and repeatedly shot by police while lying on the ground

(police gathered around, bodies lying on the ground, police move close to some of them still armed)

JOURNALIST: He said not everything that happened on the koppie had been exposed

SOQ

13 03 2013

ANCHOR: Welcome back, you're watching the news at 7. National commissioner Riah Phiyega will start giving evidence at the Marikana Commission tomorrow. Her testimony was delayed as the re-examination of miner, Mzoxolo Madigiwana, took longer than anticipated

(man struggling to walk up the stairs onto the stage, moving with the aid of a crutch, two neatly dressed men behind him, one in front of him, a woman, a screen with a slide "Marikana")

JOURNALIST: 24 year old Mzoxolo Madigiwana is referred to as a dead man walking. He's a survivor of the Marikana shooting, and over the past few weeks he's detailed how police tried to finish him off.

(Recorded footage of a man lying on the ground. Eyes opened, then he closes them and opens them again)

JOURNALIST: He says he was shot several times at close range while he lay bleeding on the ground

(Live footage from the actual Marikana shooting day. Police walk around, bodies of miners on the ground)

JOURNALIST: He's certain police also killed the other striking workers who fell near him *(Mzoxolo speaking through a translator):* as I was also lying there I would also sometimes move, shake a little bit...(Speaks isiXhosa) And look at the direction of Mambutshi)

(footage from Marikana shooting)

And I saw that he was in fact dead...but I'm sure that they finished him off

(recorded footage being shown on the screen)

JOURNALIST: But police disputed this evidence, using video footage presented by his legal counsel.

(legal team)

JOURNALIST: Advocate Simenyana argued that Magidiwana's initial shooting was captured on camera

(Mzoxolo)

JOURNALIST: And a subsequent alleged assault by police should have too
(*legal team*)

(Mzoxolo through a translator): As a police officer who was busy questioning me
(*Wide shot of commission hearing set up*)

Mzoxolo: (speaks Xhosa) that one, in fact, is not appearing
(*Camera pans to members of the public listening to the hearing*)

Adv Ishmael Semanya – Representing SAPS: That’s precisely my point because it didn’t happen, I will argue...
(*Mzoxolo sitting next to translator*)

Mzoxolo: Am I the one then who inflicted these injuries on myself

Semanya: I will argue that you sustained the injuries at the first time the shooting happened
(*Dali Mpofu, miner’s legal counsel*)

JOURNALIST: Advocate Dali Mpofu says they’ll argue that the shooting is captured on video.

(*wide shot of all the councils*)

JOURNALIST: Mpofu also questioned a date stamp on a photograph presented by the police...

(*Mzoxolo with a woman sitting next to him*)

JOURNALIST: that show Magidiwana on the koppie a day before the 16th of August.
Magidiwana maintains he only went to the koppie on the day of the shooting
SOQ

14 03 2013

Headline 1: Phiyega extends condolences

(*Riah walks into Marikana commission.*)

ANCHOR: On the stand, national police commissioner finally testifies at the...
(*shot of commissioners with banners of Marikana Commission in background*)

ANCHOR: Marikana commission

Riah Phiyega makes a statement to commission: With a deep sense of consciousness I am cognisant of the enormous pain and anguish which the tragedy has caused our country
(*footage of legal teams*)

ANCHOR: Good evening. This is the news at 7. I’m Vabakshnee Chetty. National police commissioner, Riah Phiyega, has finally taken the stand at the Marikana commission. She offered her condolences to the families of miners slain by police officers, branding the incident a tragedy and regrettable. But she says her officers are also still suffering.

(*gunfire from Marikana shooting incident*)

16 August 2012 – Marikana

JOURNALIST: just four days after days after officers had shot scores of miners, an incident that sent shock waves around the world...

(*Recorded footage from commission of events*)

JOURNALIST: General Riah Phiyega addressed a parade of officers stationed at Marikana. This was her message to them

Riah Phiyega is addressing officers in a recorded clip of the incident (Voice of General Riah Phiyega – National Police Commissioner): Whatever happened represents the best of responsible policing. The pain that everybody is feeling is felt by all of us, but all we did was to do our job...

(*Riah live at the commission, looking down*)

“Because I know we are hurting. I know we are bruised. I know we are challenged. We too are human. I want you to be unpolice like. I want you to actually applaud yourself...(applause)”

JOURNALIST: More than six months on; Phiyega was called to the commission to account for the actions of the officers she applauded. This time she was measured and careful (Riah Phiyega addressing the commission): With a deep sense of consciousness I am cognisant of the enormous pain and anguish which the tragedy has caused our country
(Camera pans to a close-up shot of a man who rubs his eyes)

Riah: ...and without I, therefore, register my sincere condolences ...

(pan out of room)

Riah:... to the families of all who tragically lost their lives during this incident

(pans to Riah)

Riah: ...it is within me as a leader...

(camera becomes blurry as it moves, after a woman lets out a cries uncontrollably, camera eventually lands on her head and back, doesn't show her face)

JOURNALIST: her carefully worded statement faltered only once could no longer bear to listen.

(crying woman escorted out)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega said the police were in mourning too. They'd lost two of their own
(Phiyega standing around in commission room)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega will face cross-examination when the commission resumes on Tuesday

SOQ

19 03 2013

Headline 1: Tough Questions Answered

(police commissioner and other people at the Marikana commission)

ANCHOR: The police commissioner still in the hot-seat

Riah Phiyega (addressing the commission): The gravity of this matter and what it means to all of us, I would be very, very cautious to answer such a question on presuppositions.

(Camera pans to legal teams)

ANCHOR: Good evening. This is the news at 7. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty. It's been a tough day at the Marikana Commission of Inquiry for General Riah Phiyega. The National Police Commissioner insists that her officers shot 34 striking mineworkers in self-defence in August last year. But Phiyega has conceded that she failed to properly investigate allegations that miners had been executed. She also admitted she did not know the specifics of the shooting.

(Riah Phiyega looking intently on a document, mid shot)

JOURNALIST: Round two in the struggle between South Africa's police chief

(wide shot of the commission)

JOURNALIST: and the search to uncover the truth about Marikana.

(shots of lawyers)

JOURNALIST: Evidence leaders land the first blow with a statement from a police officer who was there during the shooting

(footage from Marikana, wide of police)

JOURNALIST: Warrant Officer Myburgh came across three injured men at the small koppie, and briefly turned his back on them

Advocate Mbuyiseli Madlanga – Evidence Leader reading for the commission: I suddenly heard a gunshot behind me. As I turned I saw an NIU constable, who is unknown to me, putting his side firearm in his leg holster.

(wide shot of commission with Phiyega in frame)

Advocate Madlanga: I asked the NIU constable what is going on. He replied by saying they deserve to die, and he moved away.

(Close up of Phiyega)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega took this in her stride. She said she ordered her commanders to look into it, but the police officer in question could not be identified

(Wide shot of commission)

JOURNALIST: She conceded, however, that with some investigation he could have been identified.

(Conference with police. Dignitaries, including Phiyega, at the front. Police banners. Media)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega was also questioned about a media statement that she made a day after the killing

(close up of Phiyega at this conference)

JOURNALIST: where she told South Africa and the world that police had no choice but to use maximum force.

(side profile of Madlanga at commission)

JOURNALIST: but advocate Madlanga argued that rushed to absolve the police of any wrongdoing without considering other versions

(Camera pans to Phiyega listening intently at commission with her cheek resting on her fist)

JOURNALIST: He asked her to consider warrant officer, Myburgh's statement

Magadla addressing Phiyega at commission: Would you still continue to hold the view that in respect of all the people that...

(pans out to entire commission)

Magadla: the police fired shots at they did so in self-defence.

Phiyega responds at the commission, looking at Magadla: Given the sensitivity, the gravity of this matter, and what it means to all of us I would be very, very cautious to answer such a question on presuppositions

(Pans out to commission)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega admitted that at the media briefing she was merely relating what her officers on the ground her told her

(Zoom into Phiyega)

JOURNALIST: She had not sought corroboration.

20 03 2013

ANCHOR: Tears flowed as the Marikana commission visited the site where five people died in the week before August 16th. The inspection took place at Lonmin's Marikana Mine. Today the commissioners and lawyers were accompanied by the victims' families.

Journalist PTC in an open field, a tree behind the journalist: It's the second time the commission has visited this scene. On the 13th of August, last year 5 people lost their lives in an altercation between police and striking mine workers. But this time...

(a group of people walking in open field)

JOURNALIST: lawyers and commissioners were accompanied by families of the victims.

(a woman on her knees sobbing)

JOURNALIST: Warrant officer Manene was hacked to death in the open veld

(close up of woman sobbing)

JOURNALIST: and his sister Elizabeth, also a police officer could not contain her tears...

(a stick with an orange cone over it written the number 1, and flowers around the stick)

JOURNALIST: as she laid flowers on the spot where he died.

*(Return to PTC,)*JOURNALIST: Today, General Mphembe, an officer who asked the striking miner to disarm before heading to the koppie, told the commission

(people inspecting site)

JOURNALIST: how event unfolded on that day. But they also heard from representatives of the striking mine workers, who told the story from their perspective. After this inspection in loco the commission...

Return to PTC JOURNALIST: will adjourn until next week when General Riah Phiyega will be back under cross examination.

25 03 2013

ANCHOR: Still to come...

Headline: Sangoma Gunned down

(picture of a man, police inspecting a burnt out vehicle on some grass)

ANCHOR: a second potential Marikana witness killed. More after the break

(miners on koppie raising their fists)

ANCHOR: Welcome back you're watching the news at 7.

ANCHOR: police say the murder of a Sangoma who was believed to have performed muti rituals on some Marikana miners is a blow to the commission of enquiry. Anton Jojo was gunned down at his Eastern Cape homestead yesterday. Police wanted him to give evidence at the commission. They believe he was assassinated.

(picture of man Photo Courtesy – Daily Dispatch)

JOURNALIST: Police believe this is the traditional healer who convinced striking Marikana miners...

(scores of miners on koppie raising their fists)

JOURNALIST: ...they were invisible and invisible.

(picture of a burnt out car in the middle of some grass)

JOURNALIST: Anton Jojo died on Sunday

Eastern Cape – Bizana

JOURNALIST: and the men who allegedly opened fire on him with R5 rifles abandoned their car here.

Makhosini Nkosi – SAPS Media Consultant doing an interview outside, with a banner of the Marikana Commission behind him: he would have been aware that the police wanted to talk to him. And I guess other people would have known that as well. His death really, I think, is very unfortunate incident. It robs the commission of a very important witness.

(police inspecting burnt car)

JOURNALIST: Jojo has denied involvement with the Marikana miners

(media following people walking in the street)

JOURNALIST: his family declined to comment. He's the second potential witness to be killed. In October last year, NUM branch secretary, Dalivuyo Bongu, was also gunned down. Just days after an in loco inspection.

(Riah Phiyega sitting with chin on fists at the commission)

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile the police commissioner is still under cross examination at the commission, where she's made a reluctant concession

Advocate Mbuyiseli Madlanga – Evidence Leader, asking question at the commission: The other lot of protestors, may well have been shot at by mistake, that's the essence of it. When the police returned fire, that they believed to be coming from the bushes and crevices, whereas it may well have been that fire was fired by other police...

General Riah Phiyega – National Police Commissioner responding to a question at commission: I accept that with the heightened 'may' and the last sentence that actually said we were not able to cast judgement when this statement was made.

(wide shot of commission)

JOURNALIST: the commission continues on Tuesday

(footage of Phiyega)

SOQ

26 03 2013

ANCHOR: There was a minor scuffle between police and members of the Marikana action campaign at the commission today. Community members demonstrated to show their unhappiness with National Police Commissioner, Riah Phiyega.

(community members with placards (made professionally) written Marikana Support Campaign Don't let the police get away with murder, singing struggle song, Senzeni Na)

North West – Rustenburg

JOURNALIST: General Riah Phiyega's testimony has clearly won few friends. Community members called on her to tell the truth about the fatal shooting. But officers quickly put a stop to the protest)

(Man and policeman confront each other. Other policemen nearby, as are community members, Man says: so you want to argue here)

JOURNALIST: promoting lawyers to raise it in the commission

(Inside commission, lawyers representing miners)

Advocate Dumisa Ntsebeza – Socio-Economic Rights Institute: It was a peaceful demonstration and at a venue like this, Mr chairman I thought that we should try by all means to keep our tempers as cool as we can.

(Riah Phiyega at commission)

JOURNALIST: Earlier the police chief was asked for her opinion on the police's intervention at Lonmin's Marikana mine

(Footage of police at Marikana on the day of shooting. Bodies of deceased on ground)

JOURNALIST: that left 34 mine workers dead and more than 70 injured

(Police around dead bodies, police vehicle drives by)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega said the deaths were an unintended consequence

Advocate Mbuyiseli Madlanga asking a question at the commission: Was the operation at Marikana on 16 August 2012 a success?

(voice of Riah Phiyega but camera pans to commissioners overseeing the commission with Marikana banners behind them): I'm saying the plan was good, and I'm also saying...

(Camera pans to Advocate Madlanga): there was a disruption to the plan

Riah Phiyega now visible: the outcome was therefore different.

(Advocate Mbuyiseli argues back slightly audible, but journalist speaks over him)

JOURNALIST: but Advocate Madlanga pointed to a number of issue with the Marikana operation, and said he'll argue that it was chaotic, and did not represent the best of responsible policing

(Riah Phiyega listening)

JOURNALIST: Madlanga wrapped up his cross examination, then it was advocate George Bizos's turn

Advocate George Bizos representing Legal Resource Centre speaking at commission: You are absolutely concerned not to say a single word which may be uncomplimentary to the South African police. You are patting them on the back.

Phiyega: I do not agree, but I cannot change your assertion.

SOQ

27 03 2013

ANCHOR: Advocate George Bizos gave Riah Phiyega a bit of a history lesson at the commission today. He asked what she knew of the Sharpeville Massacre. He wanted to know why police didn't learn from this and other examples of apartheid police opening fire on protestors. Bizos also asked Phiyega is she took responsibility for the actions of her officers at Marikana last year.

(George Bizos and other legal people, Bizos is speaking, slightly audible)

North West - Rustenburg

JOURNALIST: Legendary human rights lawyer, advocate George Bizos took centre stage at the Marikana Commission

(Riah Phiyega at the commission)

JOURNALIST: and launched a barrage of pointed questions.

(Bizos can be heard, but not seen, footage of Phiyega listening to questions): 24 dead, 84 injured, as an intelligent head of the police does it not appear

Advocate George Bizos – Representing Legal Resource Centre addressing the commission: to be strange to you that there wasn't a single scratch on any policeman?

(Riah Phiyega at commission) (Bizos continues asking, but not visible): do you feel that there is any substance...

Bizos visible: in the self- defence story

Riah Phiyega It is our submission were defending themselves...

(Footage of police with guns from original Marikana shooting. There are also vehicles around, one is moving)

Bizos (not visible, pictures of Marikana): How did they manage not to have a single scratch if there was this attack that they describe?

Phiyega responds (not visible, pictures of Marikana. Can see scores of mine workers, vehicles driving around in koppie): the police are trained to do their work professional and I think it is those elements that assisted them to be able to do their work in that manner

(Bizos (not visible, pictures of Marikana with police shooting, no visible workers): Did you authorise the actions that were taken by the police force on the 16th of August?

Phiyega (visible at commission): We are not talking about a monolithic block. They are individuals at this, and that issue of cascading responsibilities and whatever. I'm overall responsible and in charge. But there are certain processes

(footage of army vehicles with armed soldiers on them)

JOURNALIST: Bizos questioned why so many tactical response members, like the special task force, were sent to Marikana. He labelled them heavily armed war-like units,

(footage of police vehicle)

JOURNALIST: and wanted to know why the outnumbered public order police

(mineworkers carrying traditional weapons)

JOURNALIST: who are trained in crowd management

(Close up of a sword being carried by one of the mine workers)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega told him to ask her commanders on the ground

(numerous police vehicles)

JOURNALIST: Bizos contended sending so many tactical members was a declaration of war. Police he said, were preparing for confrontation in Marikana, not crowd control

(miners sitting on koppie)

SOQ

28 03 2013

Police Commissioner, Riah Phiyega, has refused to accept evidence that many Marikana victims were shot in the back and the side. Advocate George Bizos says post mortem reports will prove this. He says this contradicts the police's self-defence theory. Phiyega says she hasn't seen the reports, and she hasn't been briefed.

(Start of commission (hears someone saying commission is ready) Camera on Riah Phiyega standing)

North West – Rustenburg

JOURNALIST: A second day of duelling between a top cop...

Riah Phiyega giving a statement to the commission: I would look at it differently

(Camera on George Bizos and his legal team)

JOURNALIST: and a top lawyer

(Bizos reads from a statement at the commission. Slightly audible)

JOURNALIST: and again advocate George Bizos tried to draw blood

(injured people sleeping on beds in what looks like a hospital)

JOURNALIST: he referred Phiyega to the medical records of those injured in the Marikana shooting, and said that only about 7% of the injuries were caused by rubber bullets. Bizos said clearly police preferred live ammunition over non-lethal means

Voice of Advocate George Bizos representing legal resource centre but he's not visible. The camera is on Riah Phiyega who is listening intently: Do you agree...

Bizos: that the vast majority were the victims of...

Voice of Bizos, but camera on Riah Phiyega who is listening: excessive force or maximum force and not with minimum force

Camera on Bizos but Riah Phiyega speaking: the shots? The circumstances would have to...

Phiyega: You can't read the numbers alone. You must read the numbers with the circumstances. We've spoken about pictures; we've spoken about other things, we've spoken about crouching, we've spoken about people who were upright. I don't have those facts and you also right now are not able to give me those facts

(commissioners with commission background)

Bizos voice: I want to put to you that the force employed...

(Camera on Phiyega who is sitting listening intently)

Bizos voice: was disproportional and excessive, extreme, and manifestly unlawful...

(camera on Bizos and his team)

Phiyega answers but is not visible: I disagree, it's absolutely premature...

Camera on Phiyega: There's evidence that is still going to be led here. There are arguments that are going to be taken. I disagree

(commissioners call for an adjournment)

JOURNALIST: The commission adjourned until after the Easter break

(Phiyega interacting with her legal team as they pack up)

JOURNALIST: when Phiyega will face another barrage of questions

SOQ

02 04 2013

ANCHOR (seated with a TV screen with Riah's face): National Police Commissioner, Riah Phiyega, spent another gruelling day testifying at the Marikana Commission of enquiry. Veteran advocate, George Bizos, continued his questioning of her accusing Phiyega of trying to avoid taking personal responsibility and evading important questions. Now the commission is probing the death of 34 miners at Lonmin's Marikana mine during clashes with police in August last year.

North West - Rustenburg

(footage of legal teams at the Marikana Commission, with George Bizos as one of them, wide shot)

JOURNALIST: Bizos accused Phiyega of trying to hide behind the police's...

(mid shot of Bizos)

JOURNALIST: organisational bureaucracy

(mid shot of Phiyega at the commission)

JOURNALIST: the police commissioner earlier told the enquiry...

(general shots from commission)

JOURNALIST: police had a well thought out operational plan that was disrupted. But she could not explain how protestors...

(mid shot or Phiyega explaining something but she is muted)

JOURNALIST: disrupted the police's plan to disarm them.

(general shots of commission)

JOURNALIST: the commission then focused on statements Phiyega made a day after the shooting.

(mid shot of Bizos at commission)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega said she was thanking police for following protocol.

Riah Phiyega (addressing commission seated, referring to documents around her): On the very day that I made the statement, a question was asked to me about the massacre

(mid shot of Bizos sitting at commission with hand on head, reading a document)

Phiyega: and my response on that day was...

Phiyega addressing commission, now in shot: it is an unfortunate choice of words

(general shot of commission)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega was also asked if the direction to confront mineworkers...

(mid shot of one of the commissioners, Ian Farlam, with his name on a card in front of him, seated at commission)

JOURNALIST: had a connection with any communication or directions

(general shot commission)

JOURNALIST: she received from the police minister. She said police minister, Nathi Mthethwa does not give police operational instructions

Phiyega addressing commission in shot: Our operational instructions, as I've already said, are not coming from the minister

(footage of police woman on the screen in a tape being played at the commission)

JOURNALIST: Statements made by the North West Police commissioner...

(general shots of commission)

JOURNALIST: ahead of the Marikana tragedy, also come under scrutiny

(back to screen with policewoman on it talking; footage being played to those attending the commission, the woman is giving a briefing)

JOURNALIST: General Zukiswa Mbombo spoke to the media hours before the miners were shot dead.

Adv. George Bizos – Legal Resource Centre addresses the commission seated. The shot is taken from the side, can't really see his face. He is flagged by his legal team. It is a mid-shot: Lieutenant general Mbombo was reported on several news channels on the morning of the 16th saying that...

(Shots of Phiyega at commission)

Bizos voice: today...

Bizos in shot: We are ending this matter

(shots of Phiyega)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega supported Mbombo's statements saying

(shot of Bizos)

JOURNALIST: she had the situation under control.

Phiyega addressing commission: She is the highest, most senior official in this province. And she has the rights, the responsibilities and the mandate to take those type of decisions

(Road sign from Lonmin, outside)

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile the mine in the spotlight, Lonmin...

(close-up of logo written "Lonmin Platinum")

JOURNALIST: has appointed Ben Magara as chief executive officer

(general shots from the mine)

JOURNALIST: Magara will take up his position on July 1st.

03 04 2013

(Three anchors are visible from a shot from above. All seated Camera does a mid-shot of Anchor 1)

ANCHOR: Good evening. You're watching SABC news live from Johannesburg. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty. Coming up in the next hour we'll bring you analysis on the Central African Republic, more on Riah Phiyega's marathon testimony at the Marikana commission, and tensions escalate between north and south Korea. But there's also lots happening on the business and sporting fronts. To tell us more, my colleagues in studio...

(expands from A1 only to a wide shot with all three anchors)

(Footage from Marikana Commission. Wide shot of commission)

Headline 2 -Marikana Upheavals

ANCHOR: Opposition to move the...

(zoom into logo)

ANCHOR: Marikana commission of enquiry to Gauteng, and...
(*footage of police Nyala in Marikana from past footage*)

ANCHOR: police and the national commissioner again under fire.

03 04 2013

ANCHOR: There's resistance to an application to move the Marikana Commission of Inquiry to Gauteng. The Bapobapogale Traditional Authorities is one of the bodies opposing it. The motion was proposed three weeks ago by Advocate Dali Mpofu representing injured mine workers.

(*footage from commission;*)
Marikana – North West

JOURNALIST: The Bapobapogale authority argues the event took place in Marikana and should be dealt with there. And says commissions are legal bound to start and end at the same place. Commission chair...

(*mid shot of Ian Farlam*)

JOURNALIST: Ian Farlam met justice minister, Jeff Radebe...

(*close-up of Marikana Commission of enquiry logo*)

JOURNALIST: ... this morning to discuss the application.

Ian Farlam – commission chair addressing the commission seated indoors with some bits of the logo in the background: The applicants must be given an opportunity to file opposing or replying affidavits if they so wish. Thereafter there shall be an occasion for oral arguments on the matter. And only after that would the minister and I be in a position to consider the application

(*Footage from 16th August. Police Nyala in Marikana, police standing around*)

JOURNALIST: The police's operational plan and poor crowd management were under scrutiny again today

Advocate Gcina Malindi – HRC representative addressing the commission seated: the goal of crowd management is to manage the situation with no loss of life or serious injuries. Do you agree this operation was disastrous?

Riah Phiyega – National Police commissioner addressing the commission and responding to the question posed to her: I do not agree with the concept disastrous. But I am on record saying it is regrettable.

(*police and vehicles at Marikana – file footage*)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega says though Marikana could help change ...

(*Group of miners at koppie in Marikana – file*)

JOURNALIST: crowd control policies...

(*Phiyega at commission*)

JOURNALIST: But the top cop later lost her temper when questioned on the credibility of her affidavit.

Adv. Schalk Burger – Lonmin Representative asking a question to Phiyega at the commission: Yes, I would have thought when you depose to an affidavit you would read the document before you take the oath. Now you couldn't have read this document because its page six doesn't lead onto page seven, and page seven doesn't lead onto page eight

Phiyega responding to question (pounds her finger on the table): This is my statement, by the way, and I stand by it

(*shots of people at commission*)

JOURNALIST: the hearing continues tomorrow
SOQ

04 04 2013

ANCHOR: It was another gruelling day for police commissioner, Riah Phiyega. She's been testifying at the Marikana Commission of Inquiry in the North-West. Today Phiyega was questioned on who should take ultimate responsibility.

(police firing, shots can be heard, footage from August 16th 2012)

JOURNALIST: One of the biggest police operations in post-apartheid South Africa, but it led to the death of 24 miners at the hands of police. Phiyega says this was unprecedented. She maintains the police's public order plan was disrupted.

(footage inside commission, wide shot)

JOURNALIST: That plan came under fire yet again.

Dali Mpofu – Advocate representing Injured Minster addressing Phiyega at commission: Your plan, which is a post-apartheid plan, obviously involved communication with the protestors, didn't

Phiyega responds. Can't see her initially, but shot then goes to her: Were police given the time

(footage from 16 August)

JOURNALIST: Questions were raised about who deployed the public order police. Phiyega says she delegated authority to North-West Commissioner, Zukiswa Mbombo

Mpofu is addressing Phiyega at commission: You cannot delegate that particular power to a provincial commissioner. Do you understand that?

Phiyega responds in shot: I'm overall responsible, but I cannot hold hands of provincial commissioners to deal with the Taungs with the Marikanas and all those.

(shot of a lawyer looking intently)

JOURNALIST: A legal representative for Lonmin mines also questioned...

(shot of Phiyega at commission)

JOURNALIST: Phiyega's accountability as commander in chief. She was asked...

(shot of Judge Farlam with Marikana commissioner banner slightly visible with him)

JOURNALIST: whether she would take responsibility for the use of excessive force

Schalk Burger – Lonmin Representative addressing Phiyega at commission: So you're not willing to accept that this commission can make an adverse finding to the South African police service?

Phiyega responds: I do not say I will not accept what the commission finds. What the commission finds, I can't change

(Wide shot of inquiry.)

JOURNALIST: The inquiry continues. SOQ

Top Stories 2b: Phiyega in the Hot Seat

(people at Marikana commission, Judge Farlam, Riah Phiyega)

ANCHOR: National Police commissioner, Riah Phiyega grilled on who should ultimately take responsibility for the death of 24 miners in August last year.

05 04 2013

Headlines - Commission of Inquiry Adjourned

(wide shot of commissioners)

ANCHOR: Allegations of evidence tampering
(mid shot of Riah Phiyega)

ANCHOR: Police Commissioner, Riah Phiyega defends the police's move...
(mid shot of Judge Farlam)

ANCHOR: to remove weapons in order to save lives
(mid shot of Dali Mpofu)

ANCHOR: National police commissioner, Riah Phiyega, says weapons were moved from the crime scenes at Marikana in August last year. This was done to allow paramedics access to the injured. She was being quizzed about evidence tampering at two sites in Marikana where police shot and killed 34 protesting miners. Crime scene photographs show stark discrepancies.

(Dali Mpofu addressing commission)

North West

ANCHOR: The representative for the injured miners advocate Dali Mpofu put it to the commission that evidence...
(wide shot of presiding commissioners with Marikana banner behind them)

ANCHOR: was tampered with to show that police acted in self-defence.
(Phiyega at commission)

ANCHOR: After 3/4 weeks on the witness stand Phiyega gets a short break.
(camera on one of the legal counsels)

ANCHOR: The commission resumes on April the 16th. She will be questioned further. The issue of moving the hearing to a Gauteng venue...
(Dali Mpofu at commission)

ANCHOR: could still be on the cards..

Top Stories – Commission of Inquiry Adjourned

(Dali Mpofu speaking at Commission)

ANCHOR: Allegations of evidence tampering questioned...
(wide shot of commissioners with commission banner behind them)

ANCHOR: at the Marikana crime scenes. Police commissioner Riah Phiyega defends...
(Riah Phiyega at commission)

ANCHOR: the police's move to remove weapons in order to save lives. The commission resumes...

(Another legal counsel)

ANCHOR: on April 16th when she will be questioned further.

(wide shot of commissioners)

ANCHOR: National Police Commissioner, Riah Phiyega, says weapons were moved from the crime scenes in Marikana in August last year. This was done to allow paramedics access to the injured. She was being quizzed about evidence tampering at two sites in Marikana where police shot and killed 34 protesting miners. Crime scene photos show stark discrepancies. Advocate Dali Mpofu argued evidence was tampered with to show that police acted in self-defence. Please be aware the following visuals might be disturbing.

(A man is lying dead on the ground with a panga next to him taken at night. Photo from commission screen)

North West - Rustenburg

JOURNALIST: Graphic images under scrutiny. In this picture taken in the evening, a panga can be seen next to the deceased.

(Two other similar images juxtaposed with the first one, where the dead man does not have the panga next to him, taken in the day. Photo from commission screen)

JOURNALIST: But in an earlier version, no weapon is visible

(Dali Mpofu addressing commission)

JOURNALIST: These are the inconsistencies Mpofu wanted the top police official to explain.

Gen. Riah Phiyega – National Police Commissioner addressing commission: The spirit of doing that was to assist those who were there to save lives. And we as police also do not use our eyes to decide that somebody is dead.

(Footage from the day of the shooting. Wide shot of police in the distance, shot through barbed wire)

JOURNALIST: Mpofu tore into the police's explanation that weapons were removed to allow paramedics to assist the injured

Adv. Dali Mpofu – Representing injured Miners addressing the commission: By the time the weapons were removed and put into a pile the paramedics had not arrived

(Riah Phiyega listening at commission)

Mpofu, not in the shot: Those arms were actually moved almost immediately...

(police at Marikana on the day of shooting)

Mpofu, not in shot: after the shooting.

Riah Phiyega addressed commission: I can only say you need to give me your facts to that. When you say they were removed long before the paramedics came when did the paramedics arrive, and when did K9 arrive. It's very important for us to look at those facts.

(Mpofu slightly audible, but journalist speaking over him)

JOURNALIST: Leaving the issue of evidence tampering, Mpofu moved on to...

(Police and police vehicles at Marikana. File footage)

JOURNALIST: questioning whether police breached crowd control protocols...

(police firing at Marikana)

JOURNALIST: on the day.

Mpofu addressing commission: if individuals are found to be responsible for those breaches, right through the chain, there should be consequences and heads must roll.

Phiyega responds: I'm comfortable in just saying relevant remedies...

(mid shot of judge Farlam)

Phiyega, not in shot: will be looked into. I don't want to use your words...

Phiyega back in the shot: of rolling of heads

Mpofu responds but not in shot: it's fine

(wide shot of commissioners)

JOURNALIST: After 3/4 week on the witness stand...

(File footage of Phiyega at commission where she is rubbing her eyes)

JOURNALIST: Riah Phiyega gets a short break. The commission resumes...

(other legal counsels)

JOURNALIST: on April the 16th when she will be questioned further. The issue of moving the hearing to a Gauteng venue...

(Wide shot of commission)

JOURNALIST: Could still be on the cards

SOQ.

9. Nelson Mandela in hospital

10 03 2014

Headline 1: Scheduled Check up

Cyclist (white male): Yeh we've heard about it. We wish him well. Hope it's nothing too serious and hope he has a speedy recovery.

Motorist (White male: He's a great person, he's a great man, and we're all very proud of him in this country, hey

(Footage of Mandela at an event, walking using a walking stick, on his arm, Thabo Mbeki.

Graca also appears to be there)

ANCHOR: Good wishes pour in for former president. The elder statesman back home and doing well

ANCHOR: A very good evening and welcome to the news at 7. Former president, Nelson Mandela, is back home tonight, after being discharged from hospital. He spent just one night at a Pretoria medical facility for what the Presidency has described as a routine check-up and test. Presidential spokesperson, Mac Maharaj, has confirmed that Mandela's tests went well. He will continue to be monitored by his medical team.

(Footage obtained during an exclusive SABC visit to Mandela earlier this year. His is seated and is surrounded by family. There is a big ANC flame ablaze)

JOURNALIST: Nelson Mandela, a revered icon

(closer shot of Mandela on chair alone)

JOURNALIST: news of another hospitalisation had the country and the world...

(even closer shot)

JOURNALIST: ...on tender hooks.

(an ambulance)

Pretoria

JOURNALIST: An announcement late yesterday said he'd been admitted to a Pretoria hospital for a scheduled check-up in line with someone of his age, and there was no need for panic. Madiba is now back home.

(Graphic of Map with Durban highlighted, voice of Mac Maharaj: Presidential spokesperson. Icon of telephone)

Maharaj: The doctors have now completed the tests. He is well and as before he remains under the management of the medical team. At the same time, we would like to appeal to the media and the public for privacy for Madiba and his family.

(shots of Mandela from SABC visit)

JOURNALIST: Now 94, Mandela's been in and out of hospital recently

(footage of Mandela holding a book, Nelson Mandela with his daughter and Ahmed Kathrada)

Journalist: In 2011 he was admitted to hospital for what was said to be routine tests

(Zoom in on the book his name "Nelson in big bold letters)

JOURNALIST: It later emerged he had suffered a serious lung infection

(Image of Mediclinic)

JOURNALIST: Last year Mandela was admitted to a Pretoria hospital

(Zoom into Mediclinic Heart hospital signage)

JOURNALIST: For a recurring lung infection

(Ambulance driving out of a medical facility)

JOURNALIST: Gall stones were also discovered and removed. He remained in hospital for almost 3 weeks. With news of this latest hospitalisation an outpouring of prayers and wishes for a quick recovery

(people at church, singing audible)

Soweto

JOURNALIST: Congregants at the Regina Moundi...

(Footage of bowed head and uplifted hands)

JOURNALIST: ..prayed for Madiba

(Interview with Father Benedict Mahlangu: Regina Mundi Priest): Tata we are praying for you, speedy recovery, and do remember that Soweto is always behind you and your family...

(Interview with Margaret Nirenda: Soweto Resident – voice over): May he have a speedy recovery because he fought for freedom in this country.

(Outside Mandela's Houghton home)

JOURNALIST: Outside the Mandela family home...

(people walking on street, cars driving by)

JOURNALIST: there were well wishes from passer-by.

Cyclist (white male): Obviously We wish him well. Hope it's nothing too serious and hope he has a speedy recovery.

Black man, speaking another language, voice over: We still need him. May he see many more days. May he give us the energy to carry on

Motorist (White male: He's a great person, he's a great man, and we're all very proud of him in this country, hey.

Black woman voiced over: We love Mandela too much. I wish him well.

Journalist PTC: It's been very quiet outside Houghton home. It is unlike December when the elderly statesman spent a prolonged period in hospital. A lack of information then sparked a media frenzy

(car parked outside home, no one on streets)

JOURNALIST: Today's lack of activity...

(people walking in the street)

JOURNALIST: Is perhaps a sign of the media heeding the call for privacy

(12th ave and 4th street signs zoomed in)

JOURNALIST: and more trust in the presidency which has promised to communicate better.

On the elder statesman's condition

SOQ

(police walking on pavement)

28 03 2013

Headline 3: Madiba under observation

Mandela and Graca in a vehicle footage from 2010 world cup

ANCHOR: The elder statesman back in hospital. He's been admitted for a recurring lung infection

(footage of Mediclinic hospital)

(journalists camped outside his house).

Interview with someone outside Madiba's house. Black man: We beg our God to heal him. We are still needing him.

(Ambulance driving into hospital)

ANCHOR: Former President Nelson Mandela will remain in hospital this evening. The former statesman was admitted to an undisclosed hospital late last night. He's being treated for a recurring lung infection. The presidency has asked South Africans and the world to keep Madiba in their prayers.

(Madiba and Graca at 2010 world cup driving in a vehicle waving)

JOURNALIST: Madiba's last public appearance, flashing that signature Madiba smile.

(wide shot of them on the pitch)

JOURNALIST: during the final of the 2010 Fifa world cup. A grand moment South Africa hosting the world. Since then, Madiba has kept away from the public eye.

(media outside of Mandela's home in Houghton)

JOURNALIST: In recent times his health has dominated world headlines

(Footage of a visit by SABC staff to his home)

JOURNALIST: in 2011 Madiba was admitted to the Milpark Hospital

(close-up of Madiba)

JOURNALIST: in Johannesburg for routine test related to respiratory problems. In early 2012,

(footage outside Mediclinic)

JOURNALIST: he was admitted for a stomach ailment, and in December last year, Mandela underwent an operation to remove gallstones and treat a lung infections. He was discharged after 18 days about three weeks ago he was admitted to a Pretoria hospital for a scheduled check-up, and discharged a day later.

(cars parked outside Mandela's home in Houghton)

JOURNALIST: last night

Johannesburg – Houghton

JOURNALIST: he was again admitted to hospital. President Jacob Zuma has called on all South Africans to pray for Madiba.

Mac Maharaj presidential spokesperson doing an interview in an office seated: We have full confidence, says president Zuma, in the medical team, and we believe that they will do everything possible to ensure Madiba's recovery.

(outside Madiba's home)

JOURNALIST: ordinary south Africans are wishing...

(A stone is written, "You are our Hero!")

JOURNALIST: ...the elderly statesman a speedy recovery.

Vuyani Jwaxa – Concerned Citizen who is a black man doing an interview outside: We beg our Lord to heal him. We are still needing him. He do a lot for us and we are still need some more

(media outside Mandela's home)

JOURNALIST: Outside his Houghton home, local and international media are keeping a close watch. The presidency has called on the public to afford the Mandela family privacy.

SOQ

29 03 2013

Headline: Madiba in Good Spirits

(people singing and worshiping in church)

ANCHOR: special prayers for Nelson Mandela as Christians mark Easter Friday

Interview with Mandela outside church. She is wearing church uniform: We are extremely touched and very, very humbled by the praying fraternity

(Another church group also in the church. Sitting down.)

ANCHOR: Good evening this is the news at 7. I'm Vabakshnee Chetty.

ANCHOR: Special prayers were held for former president Nelson Mandela at Easter Friday services across the country today. Madiba spent his second day in hospital undergoing treatment for a recurring lung infection.

(Congregants at church, singing and worshiping. Winnie Mandela also visible ins hot)

Soweto

JOURNALIST: A mass to remember the day Christ...

(a cross)

JOURNALIST: was nailed to the cross

(congregants singing)

(Madiba's family holding sturdy as he walks indoors viewing pictures on a wall, File)

JOURNALIST: and also pray for the 94 years old world icon

Church orderly delivering a message from the pulpit inside church. Voice over: We can't forget to pray for our icon, Tat' uMandela.

(Congregants are praying. Audible, but soft)

JOURNALIST: The church also called on the rest of the world to continue praying for him.

Winnie Madikizela-Mandela doing an interview outside with church members around her.

Close up: Tata is doing well, and he's responding very well to treatment.

Journalist asks a question as part of the interview. The footage cuts away from the interview into footage in the church as she asks the question: Have you been to hospital yet?

Camera back at interview on Winnie Mandela: I don't think I should answer that question

(outside Mandela's home in Houghton, cars and media, fairly empty streets)

Johannesburg: Houghton

JOURNALIST: A few cars were also seen outside Madiba's home in Houghton.

Journalist does a PTC outside the home, in the street. The latest statement issues by the presidency also states that the former statesmen is in good spirits and remains under observation in hospital

Mac Maharaj – Presidential spokesperson doing an interview seated indoors: He had a full breakfast this morning. And the doctors are reporting that he is making steady progress in response to the treatment that he has been receiving.

(Side profile of statute of Mandela. Wide shot. People visible visiting it)

JOURNALIST: Thoughts went out to the elder statesman

(close up of face of statue with fist raised)

JOURNALIST: across the country

Bloemfontein

(people visiting the statue)

JOURNALIST: Scores visited Mandela museums and statues.

Two Children are doing an interview. The father is there. White males: "Get well soon Madiba." "Get well soon Madiba." Black male: "Baba have a speedy recovery we all love you."

(wide shot outside Nelson Mandela Museum)

JOURNALIST: At Madiba's home village Qunu..

(inside the museum with visitors)

Eastern Cape: Qunu

JOURNALIST: visitors paid tribute

Visitor is doing an interview outside. Black male: "We decided no; we'd better see his work, what he has done in his past. That will never be forgotten".

(People in a church, a different group this time, a man speaking loudly, but turned down in editing, can be heard saying, in Xhosa "our Father, Mr Mandela"...)

JOURNALIST: and more prayers for a speedy recovery at Qunu St John's Apostolic church

(Congregants can be heard singing)

SOQ

30 03 2013

Headline 3: Treated for Pneumonia

(Madiba and Graca footage from world cup, waving from vehicle driving around in the pitch)

ANCHOR: Madiba comfortable...

(journalists outside his Houghton home)

ANCHOR: and breathing without difficulty

ANCHOR: Former president Nelson Mandela has spent a third day in hospital, where he is being treated for pneumonia. The presidency says he is comfortable and breathing without difficulty.

Journalist is doing PTC outside Madiba's home in Houghton. The latest statement issued by the presidency states that former president Nelson Mandela is comfortable...

(Mandela with his daughter and grandson in a room with pictures. He is having difficulty walking, using a walking stick)

JOURNALIST: and responding to treatment. The statement also said that doctors had advised that due to a lung infection, the former statesman had developed a...

Back to journalist doing PTC: a plural infection, which means that excessive fluids surrounded the lungs. Now that has since been drained, allowing the former president to be able to breathe without difficulty.

Mac Maharaj – Presidential Spokesperson doing an interview seated indoors: Former President Nelson Mandela was admitted to hospital late on the evening of the 27th of March, for a recurrence of pneumonia

(Graca and Mandela at world cup, old footage)

Maharaj: but Madiba continues to respond to treatment.

Journalist doing PTC: now this is definitely good news for South Africans...

(media contingent outside his home)

JOURNALIST: and many around the world watching developments around Madiba's health

Old man does interview outside in the village. Black Voice over: "If we could take his illness we would. His hospitalisation is painful for us." Black man is doing interview. Voice

over: "May Madiba recover at that hospital. May God help him."

(footage from an exclusive interview that SABC did with him in 2012)

JOURNALIST: The world continues to pray for Madiba

SOQ

31 03 2013

ANCHOR: The African Union has sent its best wishes for the speedy recovery of elder statesman, Nelson Mandela. The 94 year old is being treated for pneumonia, and thousands of people are praying for the country's first democratic president. This is his fourth day in hospital.

(women in church uniform with eyes closed, hands raised, singing and praying)

Gauteng: Tyrannus Apostolic Church, Meyerton

JOURNALIST: Seeking divine intervention, these thousands of faithful gathered here to pray for the Father of the nation

(front of congregation with people dressed in plain clothes, also praying with hands raised)

JOURNALIST: Among them Madiba's granddaughter invited to worship here two weeks ago.

Ndileka Mandela – Granddaughter: This was a prayer that preceded his being hospitalised. And the fact that they thought it necessary as a church to pray and do a thanksgiving prayer, and never in my wildest dreams did I know that by the time the prayer came he would be lying in a hospital bed...

(praying congregants)

JOURNALIST: It seems the entire nation is praying

(Billboard with Mandela's face written "Thanksgiving prayer and another message which isn't legible)

Simon Mokowna – Pastor: We are saying to him, be blessed, be healed, and we are praying that God should lift up his hand and touch you

(footage of Madiba's granddaughter seated in front with body guards next to her)

JOURNALIST: The Vaal area where the...

(Journalist does PTC from in front of Mandela's Houghton home)

JOURNALIST: Mandela family attended the church service is also significant because it is where Madiba consoled the families of the victims of the 1992 Boibotong Massacre

(footage of white children and mom outside Mandela's house, on the lawn next to a flower patch)

JOURNALIST: here outside his home both young and old leave messages of support.

Western Cape: Robben Island

(people walking down a corridor of a prison, zoom into one of the gates)

JOURNALIST: The scene repeated on Robben Island, where Madiba was incarcerated

White women doing interview outside, in front an old photo of the prisoners: I would thank for always picking the more difficult path...

Black man doing an interview next to ship written Robben Island: We are very blessed to have him up to that age

Legs and feet of a statue of Mandela with people taking photos there

Free State: Bloemfontein

JOURNALIST: Scores meanwhile continued to visit statue sites...

(a wide shot from the bottom of the statue of Madiba with his fist raised in the air)

JOURNALIST: including this 8m high one of Madiba

Black child doing an interview outside, close to where the statue is: Mr Mandela we wish you a speedy recovery. God bless you.

(Graphic entitles "What is pleural effusion?" Shows diagram of three people, showing inside their chest, their lungs visible. Other words that then come onto the graphic... "build-up of fluid between lung and chest wall...causes: complication of various conditions. Common causes: - pneumonia (lung infections – come arthritic conditions – low level of protein in blood)

JOURNALIST: Madiba suffered a recurring lung infection, which led to a pleural effusion. It's causes can be attributed to various conditions...

(Graphic entitled " What Madiba may have had:" same diagram with different words "- the pleural effusion can be drained – usually by inserting a needle of tube through the chest wall – anaesthetic injected into the skin and chest wall for pain – This may be a one-off procedure to relieve symptoms)

JOURNALIST: and can be treated painlessly with antibiotics

(A delegation of dignitaries, including Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma walking down a corridor)

JOURNALIST: The African union sent a message of support

(footage of Mandela which SABC got during a visit to his home earlier in the year)

JOURNALIST: It said has placed its confidence in the medical team tending the elder statesman

SOQ

01 04 2013

ANCHOR: Former president Nelson Mandela continues to recover in hospital this afternoon. He has spent a fifth day in hospital for treatment of a lung infection. Well wishes continue to pour in from around the world

(footage of Madiba from when SABC visited him)

JOURNALIST: Good news yesterday. The elder statesman had rested and continued to receive treatment. Government said it was satisfied with the medical care he was receiving, and that Madiba's health was improving.

(footage from an event Madiba attended when he could still walk)

JOURNALIST: but there's still no news yet on when he might be discharged from hospital.

(footage of media camping outside his home in Johannesburg)

JOURNALIST: The world's media continues to camp outside his home, waiting for news.

Journalist does PTC from outside the home: the elder statesman has received well wishes from around the globe. Everyone wants Madiba home and doing well. The congress of South African traditional leaders says the country should, at this time, be reminded of Madiba's great legacy, and that should be guarded\

(Footage of Madiba is talking. Can hear him initially then fades down)

JOURNALIST: and well wishes and messages of support continue to pour in.

Phathakile Holomisa – CONTRALEA: He was aware of the critical need for the institution of traditional leaders to continue to play its role in the lives of democratic south Africa.

(Outside a village home. People standing outside with a big tree in the shot)

JOURNALIST: In Botswana that Grawesile family are holding their dear friend in thought and prayer.

(Inside the home. People talking)

JOURNALIST: They hosted Madiba and other exiled leaders like Oliver Tambo during apartheid.

(An old woman doing an interview but muted)

JOURNALIST: 92-year old Florence Grawusile...

(three women sitting on a couch in doors, one of them is Florence)

JOURNALIST: and her daughters remember those days as if it were yesterday.

Florence Kgaboesele – Hosted Madiba doing an interview inside while seated on a couch.

Voice over. My wish is he wasn't far away, that I could just see him face to face. Even though I'm old now, and our memories have faded, I will never forget him, and wish him a speedy recovery.

Beauty Kgaboesele – Daughter: Most of them came from South Africa, but because of the situation that you had at home, my parents didn't have enough space for all the refugees who were coming from this side to that side to this side. So when they came my father managed to take some of them to some other places.

Outside

JOURNALIST: The governments of Botswana and South Africa have declared the Kgaboesele home a national heritage site.

(officials interacting with people outside)

JOURNALIST: monuments are being built at the home...

(zoom into a tombstone)

JOURNALIST: and grave sites nearby.

(back inside home with three women sitting on coach)

JOURNALIST: It's an exciting honour for the family, but for the Kgaboesele matriarch, her thoughts are with Madiba...

(footage of Madiba from SABC exclusive)

JOURNALIST:...and his family

SOQ

ANCHOR: Let's now get an update on former president Nelson Mandela. Presidential spokesperson, Mac Maharaj, joins us now on the line for an update on Madiba's condition. A very good evening to you Mr Maharaj. Thank you for joining us. How is the former president doing?

(graphic with a photo of Mac Maharaj and a small symbol of a phone)

Voice of Mac Maharaj – Presidential Spokesperson: Thank you very much for having me. Good evening. Former President Nelson Mandela is still in hospital where he is receiving treatment for pneumonia. There is no significant change in his condition since the update issued last night the 31st of March. He spent part of family day today with some members of his family who appreciate the support they have been receiving from the public.

ANCHOR: Mr Maharaj what are the doctors saying about how much longer president Nelson Mandela will have to stay in hospital?

Maharaj: We have to take into account his age. The doctors will never give us a date about when they will discharge him. They will follow his progress, and only when they are satisfied, and there is no risk involved, then only will they decide to discharge him. And I

think that is a position that all of us would support because we would like Madiba to be with us for as long as possible, and to be well and comfortable.

ANCHOR: thank you very much. That was presidential spokesperson, Mac Maharaj, sharing that sentiment of many people, not only here at home, but across the world praying for the recovery, and the speedy recovery of former president, Nelson Mandela.

02 04 2013

ANCHOR: The presidency says Nelson Mandela's condition in hospital remains unchanged. The former president is receiving treatment of pneumonia. The elderly statesman has been visited by family and friends. He was admitted to hospital on Wednesday last week. We will of course bring you the latest on that story as the information comes to us. Do stay with us because there'll be more news from around the country, and your region after the break.

03 04 2013

ANCHOR: The presidency says Nelson Mandela's health is improving. The elder statesman, however, remains in hospital. He is being treated for pneumonia. Well, wishes and prayers for his speedy recovery are continuing to stream in. And residents from Madiba's home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape are hoping he will return there when his health improves.

(cars driving in a semi-rural area)

JOURNALIST: This is the economic hub of the former Transkei
Eastern Cape – Mthatha

(Fancy rondavels. Wide shot. People climbing into the back of a truck)

JOURNALIST: Only 40 km away, the rural home...

(footage of an old Mandela sitting in a chair smiling at the camera, pans out to show Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma sitting next to him)

JOURNALIST: of Nelson Mandela, in the village of Qunu

(shot of a school wall written "Nelson Mandela No-Moscow Primary School")

JOURNALIST: it is where Mandela grew up through the year. The former statesman...

(footage of kids leaving school)

JOURNALIST: contributed to the construction of schools and clinics in the area.

(some young men interacting with kids)

JOURNALIST: He hosted a Christmas party every year

(group of kids standing, wrapped in blankets)

JOURNALIST: Residents want Madiba well, and living among them soon.

(Woman dressed in church uniform does interview outside with some church members around her. Voice over): We see Mandela just the way we see Jesus Christ. There were homes that we closed, but today they are open. There were people that didn't have food, but today they have food.

(headshot statue of Mandela)

JOURNALIST: The elder statesman hails from the Madiba rural clan

(shots of fancy rondavels)

JOURNALIST: Traditional leaders say they are thinking of him at this time.

Pathekile Holomisa – CONTRALESA does interview outside: We should ensure that the constitution becomes a success, and everybody buys into it. And that the values of ubuntu, respect for the well-being of another human being, must be promoted. We must learn to live alongside each other as various races and ethnic groups in South Africa. And I believe that's what Madiba championed

(shots from outside museum)

JOURNALIST: The Qunu museum...

(Close up of a picture of Mandela outside museum)

JOURNALIST: is a popular tourist attraction

A black man who's not labelled does interview outside with a billboard written "Welcome to Nelson Mandela Museum, Qunu" a picture of Mandela and the museum: In every household the presence of an elderly person is a blessing

(shot of Mandela, Graca and Nkosazana indoors at home)

JOURNALIST: nelson Mandela's iconic status has had a massive impact on this community, resulting in...

(people inside the museum)

JOURNALIST: a significant economic boost for the small village. And it's a rare honour, not many have, to grow up where the icon resides

(billboard outside museum)

JOURNALIST: SOQ

04 04 2013

ANCHOR: An update on Madiba's condition, now. The country's revered elder statesman is stable and much better. The comment was made by President Jacob Zuma, who visited the frail 94 year old in hospital. He's being treated for pneumonia since being admitted to hospital on the 27th of March. His grandson Mandla, says he believes he's receiving the best possible medical care

Mandla Mandela – Grandson doing an interview outside with the sea in the background: We are always very concerned when he goes into the hospital. But over the couple of months we've seen that he does have scheduled hospital visits where the doctors just want to do check-ups and monitor him. And he's under the good hands of our capable medical doctors who are in the military, and we are sure that in no time, when the doctors are fully satisfied with the investigations they are doing, they will be sending him back home.

05 04 2013

Graca Machel says her husband is doing well, and that doctors want to make sure that Madiba has made a full recovery before discharging him. The 94 year old former statesman has been receiving treatment for pneumonia and a recurring lung infection.

(Graca Machel seated at a dinner table at a function)

Last Night - Johannesburg

JOURNALIST: It's Graca Machel's first public appearance in the nine days since former president, was hospitalised

(Graca shaking hands while being given an award)

JOURNALIST: She received an award for her contribution to peace and harmony.

(Speaking at podium of ceremony)

JOURNALIST: Machel says doctors want to be sure Mandela will not have a relapse.

(Graca kissing and greeting Gauteng Premier, Nomvula Mokonyana)

JOURNALIST: She acknowledged the outpouring of support from across the world.

Graca Machel doing an interview outside the venue of the dinner: I want to thank every single citizen of this country, of Africa, or the world, who have been praying, sending best wishes, to Madiba. And to tell you that Madiba is fine. Madiba is getting better and better. He is in hospital simply because the doctors want to be absolutely sure that he's strong enough to go home, and nothing is going to recur.

(outside Mandela's home in Houghton)

JOURNALIST: Outside the Mandela family home in Houghton...

(car driving into Mandela home)

JOURNALIST: several vehicles were seen entering and leaving...

(media contingent outside Mandela home)

JOURNALIST: Journalists continued to camp outside.

(old footage of Mandela and Graca at a function)

JOURNALIST: This is the third health for months for...

(old footage of Mandela addressing the function)

JOURNALIST: the Nobel Peace Prize laureate. Machel also thanked South Africans for their prayers and best wishes to Mandela.

06 04 2013

Headlines 1 – Mandela at home

Passer-by (black woman) does interview outside Mandela's home in Houghton: I'm very happy Tata Madiba is back home

Motorist does interview (black man): This is the day that one has been waiting for. It reminds me of the day he was released at Robben Island

(ambulance and police car driving into Madiba home)

ANCHOR: Smiles all around as former president Nelson Mandela returns home after spending nine days in hospital.

ANCHOR: former president, Nelson Mandela, is back home, after spending nine days in hospital for a recurring lung infection. The 94-year old Madiba was released following a sustained and gradual improvement in his general condition.

Johannesburg – Houghton

(outside Mandela's home)

JOURNALIST: A quiet morning outside Madiba's house

(number of vehicles parked outside, some driving into the house)

JOURNALIST: but after news of his discharge, all that changed.

(wide shot of building written Mediclinic)

JOURNALIST: There was a lot of movement outside the Pretoria hospital as well.

(Ambulance driving out of hospital)

JOURNALIST: It's strong indication that the elderly statesman was going to be released. It was only after two o'clock that it became clear that he was going home.

(zoom into a smooth white pebble written in black marker, "Dear Madiba Get Better Soon Love Caitlin Heggie)

JOURNALIST: For South Africans a moment of joy

Passer-by (black woman) does interview outside Mandela's home in Houghton: I'm very happy Tata Madiba is back home

Motorist does interview (black man): This is the day that one has been waiting for. It reminds me of the day he was released at Robben Island. So I feel like he has been released, and indeed he has been released. I'm so excited. I'm so happy

Older woman is standing doing interview outside home. Voice over: I feel very happy.

This is our icon.

(Ambulance and police vehicle drives into home)

JOURNALIST: The presidency has thanked the medical team and hospital staff for looking after Madiba.

Mac Maharaj – Presidential Spokesperson doing interview seated inside looking straight at camera: He will now receive home based high care. President Zuma would like to thank the medical staff and hospital staff for their efficient and careful management of Madiba's health. He would also thank friends throughout the world, in South Africa, in Africa for their support of Madiba and his family.

(outside Madiba home)

JOURNALIST: even young people were relieved that Madiba was feeling better and back home

Small mixed race looking boy with his white looking father does interview outside home: Tata Madiba, (and then he laughs and plays with his father)

07 04 2013

ANCHOR: Former president Nelson Mandela spent the first day at home in Houghton, after he was discharged from a Pretoria hospital yesterday. The presidency has said that Madiba will receive home-based high care. It was a quiet morning...

(shot outside Mandela's home)

ANCHOR: with mostly security personnel outside Madiba's house. With some well-wishers...

(people walking up the street)

ANCHOR: arriving with messages

Johannesburg – Houghton

ANCHOR: later the surgeon general Regina Amlakan arrived...

(man walking past a row of parked cars)

ANCHOR: Generating much interest among the media. But there was no word from Madiba's doctor.

(cars driving)

ANCHOR: family members also visited Madiba among them his daughter, Makaziwe Mandela.

(people standing around)

ANCHOR: the family, however, left soon after the medical team.

10.Nkandla

13 03 2013

ANCHOR: Public Works Minister, Thulas Nxesi, says he will table a report into upgrades at President Zuma's private residence in Nkandla in parliament. National Assembly Speaker, Max Sisulu, made the announcement today. Opposition parties have welcomed the move. Nxesi earlier stated that the report would not be made public for security reasons. Max Sisulu – National Assembly Speaker (*addressing parliament live*): Owing to the interest in the matter, he intends to table the report by the department of public work's task team on the security upgrades at the private residence of the president of the republic.

14 03 2013

ANCHOR: A proposal for the Nkandla report to be table in camera only to a special committee in parliament has raised the heckles of opposition parties. Yesterday the speaker announced that the detailed report commissioned by public works would be tabled in parliament.

parliament

MP is addressing parliament, footage taken from somewhere, white woman: Bonalela Construction Enterprises for emergency works relating to security measures. Manimy got a negotiated contract for security measures inside the house...

(pans out to show the rest of parliament)

JOURNALIST: DA MP, Anchen Dryer stood up and began giving names of companies and others related to the renovations of President Jacob Zuma's private home in Nkandla

(mid shots of MPs)

JOURNALIST: Parliamentary privilege allows for the DA not to divulge the source of the information.

MP giving address: The cost of these security measures adds up 117 million rand.

Minister Thulas Nxesi addressing parliament (Thulas Nxesi: Minister of Public Works): We said it publically when we were giving our preliminary report that there were in terms of the supply chain, and there was overpricing which we were suspecting...

(File footage of Zuma addressing parliament, wide shot showing Zuma at podium and other MPs including deputy president Kgalema Motlanthe, mainly ANC members)

JOURNALIST: Earlier today the ANC demanded that the public protector's report be dealt with behind closed doors

(opposition party benches)

JOURNALIST: but opposition parties would have none of it...

Mosiua Lekota - COPE doing an interview: This is nothing but an attempt to hide the truth of how public funds have been abused

Mangosuthu Buthelezi – IFP President: If one has nothing to hide, I wonder why they would try to suggest that a matter like this should be discussed in camera by a special committee. I think really they have lost the plot.

(back to parliament, footage of ANC benches)

JOURNALIST: Nxesi says he wants the report to be dealt with in private

(Wide shot of all of parliament, with Zuma up to address gathering)

JOURNALIST: It is not yet clear when parliament will make a decision on the matter

(Zuma seated in parliament, busying himself)

SOQ

11. North Korea

04 02 2013

Break, jingle

ANCHOR: Now for news from further afield. UN Secretary General, Ban Ki Moon, says the crisis over North Korea has gone too far. He's urged dialogue and negotiations after North Korea announced today that it would restart a nuclear reactor to feed its atomic weapons programme. China said it regretted the decision. Talks of restarting operations at the Pyongyang nuclear facility...

(Footage from Reuters of a reactor)

ANCHOR: has escalated tensions already raised following war-like threats against the US and South Korea. The reactor can make one bomb's worth of plutonium per year. It was shut down in November 2007 as part of international disarmament talks that have since stalled in February. Pyongyang conducted its third nuclear test, prompting a new round of UN sanctions. The US has bolstered its forces in the region...

(A cooling town exploding doesn't indicate where it's from and what its relevance is)

ANCHOR: since the threats.

03 04 2013

ANCHOR: South Korea says it will not rule out military action to ensure the safety of its citizens who remain in the joint industrial area in North Korea. This morning North Korea blocked access to the key industrial area, sharply escalating tensions in the area

South Korea – Paju

(footage of a gated area)

ANCHOR: More than 800 South Koreans remain in the Kaisung project

(trucks parked)

ANCHOR: About 10 kilometres inside Korea. The industrial zone is a crucial source of hard currency for the north.

(aerial shot of an industrial place)

ANCHOR: Around 53-thousand North Koreans work there. Tensions have soared since North Korea launched a long-range rocket in December, and third nuclear test in February.

(reactor)

ANCHOR: triggering US sanctions. Yesterday it threatened to re-open its mothball nuclear reactor. The US has described Pyongyang's persistent war-like talk...

(warship, helicopter carrying load)

ANCHOR: as dangerous and reckless. It has deployed nuclear capable B52s , B2 stuff bombers, and two US destroyers to South Korean air and sea space

ANCHOR: And that was a look at your regional and international news; time now to check in with...

(turns head away from camera, camera zooms out to show A3)

ANCHOR: Simon Burke on the sporting front.

04 04 2013

Headline 2 – Pyongyang positions missiles

(army vehicles with ammunition driving around)

ANCHOR: North Korea steps up its threat of a nuclear attack...

(Korean-like looking people standing on a balcony in official uniform)

ANCHOR: on the US

(large group of Korean looking people outside a building)

Another headlines...then jingle

ANCHOR: Welcome back, you're watching SABC news, coming to you live from Johannesburg.

ANCHOR: There's been universal condemnation of North Korea's warning that it's ready to launch a nuclear attack on the US and its bases in South Korea. According to reports, China, North Korea's main diplomatic allies, is also concerned about the security of nuclear facilities there and a possible influx of refugees. The EU has called on the North to stop stoking tensions, and re-engage with the international community.

(graphic of a map with China, North Korea, South Korea, Japan, Guam, Seoul and Pyongyang highlighted)

ANCHOR: North Korea has been stepping up its rhetoric after US sanctions for conducting a third nuclear test in February, and the United States and South Korea stages military drills that North Korea viewed as hostile. Yesterday it said it would restart a mothballed nuclear reactor.

(army vehicles carrying ammunition)

JOURNALIST: This morning North Korea moved what appeared to be...

(official looking people standing on balcony, some in uniform)

JOURNALIST: a mid-range missile to its east coast.

(large group of people outside what appears to be a Korean building)

JOURNALIST: it's not clear if it was mounted with a warhead.

(close-up of missile looking thing being transported by an army vehicle, a North Korean flag also mounted on it)

JOURNALIST: the missile is believed to have a range of 3000 kilometres, which would put all of South Korea, Japan, and US territory of Guam in the Pacific ocean in range

(North Korean newsreader, with subtitles written in a foreign language. Footage looks like it was obtained from another news agency. She read, and it is the voice over): We formally inform the white house and the Pentagon that the ever-escalating US hostile policy towards North Korea and its reckless nuclear threat will be smashed by the strong will of the united service personnel and people.

(officials interact at a meeting)

South Korea - Seoul

JOURNALIST: US ambassador, Sun Kin, has met the South Korean unification minister to discuss the escalating tension. The country says it's prepared for any provocation.

Kim Kwan-Jin – South Korea Defence Minister addresses meeting seated. Voice over:

We're closely monitoring North Korea, and as I've told you before, we haven't found any signs of all-out war, but we consider it provocation, and we are ready for it.

(vehicles driving around in an unknown location)

JOURNALIST: North Korea has threatened to close the case on industrial zone 10 kilometres inside the country.

(People are walking in a spacious building. Press on hand)

JOURNALIST: It generated 2 billion dollars a year in trade. Hundreds of South Korean workers are still inside the zone, trying to keep factories running.

South Korean Worker doing interview with media in the middle of the spacious building.

Standing. Voice over: It looks bleak there. I saw soldiers wearing iron helmets. When I passed the border. The worker looked worried.

(army officials raising guns in air, standing in a row outside, doing army drills)

JOURNALIST: despite the rhetoric, the white house says there is no sign that North Korea is preparing its 1.2 million armed forces for war.

ANCHOR: Earlier we spoke to Tom Wheeler from the South African Institute of International Affairs...

Tom Wheeler – SA Institute of International Affairs doing interview seated in studio: I think it's just rattling, there's an element of that. But it is something that has to be taken seriously, precisely because nobody really knows what the North Koreans will do. They're what we call a hermit state, in other words they've cut themselves off from the world, nobody can really predict what will happen. There is one...

(North Koreans walking in, led by Kim Jong Yung)

Wheeler: element here is...

(footage of crowd in a hall, cheering)

Wheeler: they have a young leader who has not been in charge...

(Kim clapping as well)

Wheeler: of that country for very long, and...

(thousands of soldiers in rows some carrying pictures of leader and banners with writing)

Wheeler: he has still go to establish as the leader of the country and get the loyalty of the military in his country

North Korea – Anti US Mass Rallies

Wheeler: the military is the most important thing in that country. So it's very important for him...

(soldiers marching)

Wheeler: to take a strong position, which the military will appreciate, will support, and I think that's what's going on here. Even though it could be very damaging for North Korea...

(wide shot of thousands of soldiers)

Wheeler: ...itself

Journalist is asking question. We don't see her, but hear her voice: if this develops into an explosive situation..

(footage of scores of soldiers holding up paintings of Kim and his father)

JOURNALIST: what are the implications for Africa and South Africa in particular?

Wheeler in shot: We're quite a long way away from that region, so the physical implications of war will probably not affect us directly.

(Army vehicles with missiles. Repeat of footage used in same sequence)

Wheeler: even if there's an explosion we're a long, long, way away. But the problem is more in the area of trade. China and Japan and South Korea are really important trading partners of South Africa, and if there is a war in that area it will affect our exports of our coal and our minerals and whatever we are selling to those three countries and perhaps other countries in that region. And of course their exports to us. We import a lot of goods from Korea, from Japan, from China, and of course clothing and many other manufactured goods, and if that is interrupted, then of course it interrupts the whole trade relationship between Africa and South Africa in particular, and the countries in that region there.

04 05 2013

Headlines – Korea Tensions

(Kim talking to some law-enforcement-looking personnel)

ANCHOR: North Korea asks embassies in Pyongyang to consider evacuating staff as tensions flare amid unconfirmed reports of missiles...

(ammunition being fired)

ANCHOR: being positioned on its East coast

ANCHOR (standing): Welcome back. You're watching SABC News, coming to you live from Johannesburg.

ANCHOR: While the United States has often described as aggressive rhetoric North Korea's threats of a military strike against its interests, it says it's taking appropriate steps to defend itself. It comes on the back of North Korea's requests to embassies in Pyongyang to consider evacuating staff if tensions flare. North Korea is...

(graphic of map with China, South Korea, North Korea, Japan, Pyongyang, Guam, Seoul highlighted)

ANCHOR: threatening war after new UN sanctions over nuclear tests in February and joint military drills by the US and South Korea

(soldiers marching with a banner written in Korean in red and white and behind them a building with a big flag on top)

JOURNALIST: While North Korea escalates its war rhetoric...

(army vehicles driving down the street in the city)

JOURNALIST: it has reportedly readied two missiles...

(Kim, flagged by another man and a person in army gear)

JOURNALIST: capable of reaching South Korea and Japan off its eastern coast.

(Graphic with words "What we know – latest")

- *Embassies to consider evacuation*
- *South deploys two destroyers*
- *U.S. sends missile defence to Guam*

JOURNALIST: North Korea has formally asked embassies in its capital to consider evacuation. South Korea's navy have deployed two battleship destroyers to watch for a possible missile launch. The US has sent defence batteries to the region that appear to be taking an even-keeled approach.

Victoria Nuland – US State Department Spokesperson giving a briefing with two US flags next to her: It depends upon us to take renewed steps to defend the United States, to defend our allies, to be prepared for necessary deterrents, etc. That is reflected in the move you've

seen announced from the Pentagon, etc. That said we continue to make the case that it doesn't have to go this way.

(UN Secretary General, Ban Ki Moon getting out of helicopter, shaking hands with people. Other officials also getting out with him)

JOURNALIST: The UN has repeatedly issued warnings this week...

(Ban Ki Moon with other officials walking into a room)

JL that the crisis had gone too far

Ban Ki-Moon –UN Secretary General giving a briefing standing at a podium: Things must be to calm down and this situation made worse by the level of communication could lead...

(Thousands of army officials standing in stands outside with several North Korean flags)

Moon: down a path

(mid shot of the soldiers giving punch like salute, slight audio can be heard)

Moon: that nobody should follow

Journalist does PTC indoors with a UN banner behind him: The Secretary General has also appealed to Beijing to influence its allies saying China could play a very important role in calming down this situation. The US government is also understood to have reached out to the Chinese. Secretary of State, John Kerry, is expected to travel to South Korea, China and Japan starting April 12.

SOQ

06 04 2013

Top Stories – Korea Tensions

(Kim giving instructions to army officials)

ANCHOR: North Korea requests embassies to consider evacuating staff if tensions flare amid unconfirmed reports of another missile...

(Ammunition being fired)

Headlines 2 – Military Send-offs

(Soldiers marching with guns, band can be heard playing)

Army official doing interview outside, at a grave site: They died in service of their country, and I, as the chief of the national defence force, I would like to say I'm proud of them

(Soldiers are carrying coffin draped in SA flag. Army officials walking in front of them)

ANCHOR: 12 of the 13 SANDF soldiers who died during battle in the CAR...

(coffin being lowered underground)

ANCHOR: have been laid to rest today. This as Michel Djotodia ordered the creation of a transitional body to appoint the interim president.

ANCHOR: A very good evening and welcome to your weekend edition of news here on SABC 3.

ANCHOR: Foreign embassies in North Korea are still assessing a warning from the government that their security cannot be guaranteed if conflict breaks out. Most embassies there have no immediate plans to evacuate personnel. The United States is...

(white house)

ANCHOR: attempting to play down the threat of war on the Korean Peninsula

United States – Washington DC

(Official walks to podium to give briefing. Behind him is a US flag)

ANCHOR: following weeks of war-like statements from North Korea. Meanwhile, one of the country's oldest allies...

(picture from a book with the writing "Relexiones de Fidel")

ANCHOR: Fidel Castro has urged the country...

(zoom out of picture to show an article)

ANCHOR: to show restraint. The former Cuban leader made his comments in a rare written reflection calling the current situation...

(jet flying)

ANCHOR: incredible and

(ammunition fired)

ANCHOR: absurd. He said North Korea has demonstrated...

(Kim and army official standing around. Kim is looking through binoculars)

ANCHOR: its technical and scientific advances, and now should take a step back

ANCHOR: The SACP in Mpumalanga has come out in support of the North Korean state. That country's ambassador to South Africa was present at the party's eighth provincial congress underway at eMalahleni in Mpumalanga. As the party...

(official seated at a table draped in black and red)

ANCHOR: outlined its progress and challenges, SACP members were encouraged...

Mpumalanga – eMalehleri

(Korean looking man speaking to SACP official)

ANCHOR: to fight corruption at all levels. North Korea's ambassador, Jo Jung Mang...'

(SCP delegates seated at conference)

ANCHOR: was welcomed at the congress, and was given the assurance that the...

(SACP official stands and speaks at podium)

ANCHOR: SACP supports the country.

Solly Mapaila – SACP second deputy general secretary doing an interview outside. Behind him in the distance are SACP members: The role of the US, they've got 40 soldiers in the Korean Peninsula, stationed in South Korea to create a buffer for the unification of that particular country, to create the division between North and South Korea. So what they are trying to do now is to pressurise North Korea country, to give up its identity, its autonomy, and its sovereignty in order that it should comply with the interests of the US.

ANCHOR: The congress will elect a new provincial executive later this evening.

12. Oscar Pistorius

08 03 2013

ANCHOR: The parents of murdered model, Reeve Steenkamp, are considering a civil claim against Paralympian Oscar Pistorius. Family lawyer, Mike Venter, says the nature and extent of the relief to be sought by Barry and June Steenkamp, still has to be determined. Pistorius stands accused of murdering Steenkamp in his Pretoria home on Valentine's day. While reports this even suggest that Oscar Pistorius plans to challenge his bail conditions. Pistorius is out on bail of a million rand...

(cut to image of Oscar walking into court and media taking pictures)

ANCHOR: ...It's believed his legal team has filed papers in North Gauteng High Court
(close-up of Oscar Pistorius looking down)

ANCHOR: ...challenging some of his bail conditions. The NPA says it's not aware of the move.

(Pans to Pistorius' family on the stand)

ANCHOR: Pistorius reportedly wants to travel given that Magistrate Desmond Nair, found he was not a flight risk

(Camera pans to the rest of the court, with Pistorius family still in shot)

ANCHOR: He's also appealed

(Cuts to Oscar in the dock rubbing his eyes)

ANCHOR: ...against being supervised by a probation officer, and against compulsory drug and alcohol testing. Pistorius claimed he thought he was...

(Shots of the wide of the court)

ANCHOR: ...shooting at an intruder. When he shot and killed Steenkamp on Valentine's day

(Images of Pistorius walking into court, law enforcement officials very visible close to the door where he walks in)

ANCHOR: Pistorius's next court appearance will be on June 4th

09 03 2013

ANCHOR: Oscar Pistorius's legal team has declined to comment on the athlete's application to appeal his bail conditions saying the matter is sub judice. Pistorius was arrested on Valentine's Day for the fatal shooting of his girlfriend, Reeve Steenkamp. He claims he mistook her for an intruder

(Oscar Pistorius's legal team at work in court)

JOURNALIST: No comment from the...

(Oscar Pistorius walking into court, looking down, media in the background)

JOURNALIST: ...heavy weight legal team. But they have confirmed that papers were filed in the Pretoria Magistrates Court yesterday
(Court benches, with Pistorius family in the front row)

JOURNALIST: they would only reveal that they're waiting for Magistrate Desmond Nair to review their application
(close-up shot Oscar in the dock alone, faced down, rubbing his eyes)

JOURNALIST: Prosecutors say they are yet to receive official papers.
(wider shot of Oscar in the dock)

Journalist: Challenging the murder accused...
(journalists, cameras surround Oscar while he sits in dock)

JOURNALIST: ...bail conditions
(Zoom into the face of a white man I don't know)

JOURNALIST: Pistorius and his legal team are challenging conditions they believe are unwarranted and unfair
(Cut to graphic which has an image of the scales of justice, blind lady justice and portions of a building)
(A picture of Oscar Pistorius, Heading – Appeal: Bail Conditions)

JOURNALIST: Among the requests, the lifting of a travel ban
(“lifting of travel ban” written on graphics)

JOURNALIST: During his bail hearing it was found that Pistorius was not a flight risk. He also wants to return to his Silverwoods Estate home...
(Return to Silverwoods Estate)

JOURNALIST: ...the scene of the crime. He's also appealing a ruling...
(“Allowed to speak to neighbours”)

JOURNALIST: that he should not speak to people in the complex. Pistorius does not want...
(:Objects to drug tests”)

JOURNALIST: to report to a probation officer, and objects to drug and alcohol testing
(Pistorius walking into court, camera flashing, packed courtroom)

Journalist: a legal expert who's closely followed Pistorius' cases believes...footage cuts and immediately goes to voice of Pierre de Vos
(Image of smiling de Vos in his doctorate gown. Symbol of a phone)

Voice of Pierre de Vos: Legal Expert: ...I would be surprised if a court actually allowed the relaxing of the bail conditions because Obviously bail is granted on the assumption that the person is not a flight risk, and also that the person won't endanger the lives of others, and the conditions imposes was exactly those to ensure that those conditions are going to be met
(Footage back in court, ambient sound audible, Pistorius walking through door. Footage used yesterday)

JOURNALIST: The NPA say the chief magistrate will have to review the application, after which a hearing date will have to be set for both Pistorius and the state to present their cases.
(Camera cuts to footage of people in court)

JOURNALIST: The magistrate can then make a ruling on the appeal. Meanwhile...
(Cut to footage of Reeve on Tropika, in Bikini, with her name at the bottom, laying on a beach)

JOURNALIST: Reeve Steenkamp's reality TV show...
(Reeve walking on beach, dressed in shorts, footage from Tropika)

JOURNALIST: which was filmed before her death has just aired its fourth episode on SABC 1. Family lawyer, Mike Venter, yesterday...
(cut to shots of a home with two bakkies outside, one driving out)

JOURNALIST: ...again confirmed that her parents had not ruled out a civil claim against Pistorius

(Oscar in court, rubbing his eyes, camera's flashing)
SOQ

11 03 2013

ANCHOR The National prosecuting authority says it will oppose an application for Oscar Pistorius's bail conditions to be relaxed. The matter will depend on the availability of the court. But the NPA expects it to be heard within a week. Lawyers for...
(footage of Oscar walking into court)

ANCHOR ...the murder accused Paralympian are reportedly seeking to have several of his bail conditions scrapped or altered. It's understood this includes permission to travel, an end to be supervised by a probation officer. He apparently also wants...
(close-up of Oscar in dock)

ANCHOR to return to his home, where he shot his girlfriend, Reeve Steenkamp...
(close up of his hands)

ANCHOR on Valentine's day
Medepe Simasiku – NPA (doing interview outside specialised commercial crime unit offices: We have received the application during the weekend, and we are currently studying that. And definitely we are going to oppose the application. Unfortunately, we cannot reveal the contents thereof because it is still a case to be decided in court.

27 03 2013

Headline: Oscar's brother in court
(two men walking into court with black bags)

ANCHOR: Coming up. Carl Pistorius in Court today. Details after the break.
(Oscar and his sister hug in court)

ANCHOR: Welcome back. You're watching the news at 7

ANCHOR: Details of a culpable homicide case against Carl Pistorius, brother of paralympian murder accused, Oscar Pistorius have emerged. Carl Pistorius appeared in the Vanderbyl Magistrate's Court today. He pleaded not guilty to the charge which related to the death of a woman in 2008.

(two men walking in a building corridor)

Gauteng: Vanderbijlpark

JOURNALIST: The Vanderbijlpark Magistrates court heard testimony...

(inside court, wide shot)

JOURNALIST: detailing how Marie Baarnard's motorbike crashed..

(close-up of Carl Pistorius)

JOURNALIST: Into a bakkie Carl Pistorius was driving on the day in question.

(man walking in corridor with police next to him)

JOURNALIST: The state's first witness, Anton Coetzee, took the stand. He gave details of a poker run in 2008 when the collision between Carl Pistorius and Marie Barnard.

(inside court)

JOURNALIST: describing Baarnard's injuries, Coetzee said her left forearm was stripped, and her hand was bent.. He says it also looked like her leg was broken. The defence raised the issue that Barnard may have been intoxicated. But Coetzee denied the claims, saying he did not see Baarnard intoxicated

(fairly small picture headed "Poker run 2008")

JOURNALIST: Photos from the poker run came under scrutiny. The defence pointed out some of the participants are shown drinking. The state also pointed out that witnesses on the scene would testify that Barnard smelt of alcohol

(journalists arranging to do interviews outside)

JOURNALIST: The NPA says it's satisfied with progress made.

Interview with Medupi Simasiku – NPA spokesperson outside: I don't think we had so many hiccups except we had a challenge of the submission that we had to make to the court. Although it was declined, I don't believe it will bog us down on what we want to achieve ultimately. It will be too early to say that somehow it will impact the outcome of the case (Carl Pistorius in court interacting with someone)

JOURNALIST: The case has been postponed till next week. Carl's appearance comes a day before his brother, Oscar Pistorius, is expected...

(footage of Oscar sitting in the dock from a previous appearance)

JOURNALIST: to challenge the bail conditions imposed on him by the Pretoria Magistrate's court. Oscar Pistorius was granted bail of R1-million rand in February. He was charged with the murder of his girlfriend...

(people sitting in court)

JOURNALIST: model, Reeve Steenkamp, on Valentine's morning.

SOQ

28 03 2013

Headline 2: Bail conditions eased

(Oscar Pistorius walking to the dock)

ANCHOR: Some relief for Oscar Pistorius. He can now travel abroad and compete *(interview with NPA person inside court)*: I believe Oscar will comply with the bail conditions as set out

(judge reads judgement)

ANCHOR: Paralympian murder accused, Oscar Pistorius, can now travel abroad to compete in international events. The North Gauteng High Court, today, relaxed his bail conditions. The blade runner was not in court. The 26 year old Athlete is currently out on 1-million rand bail. He was charged with the Valentine's day murder of his model girlfriend,.

(Oscar Pistorius walking into the dock, file)

JOURNALIST: Free to move around, Pistorius was released on bail last month. Then Chief Magistrate Desmond Nair...

(a magistrate walking up the stairs)

JOURNALIST: attached strict conditions to the bail. He ordered Pistorius to hand over his passport, and not to go near any departure points.

(Oscar standing in dock looking down)

JOURNALIST: His movement was restricted to Pretoria. He was also instructed not to go to his Silverwoods mansion, the scene of the crime.

(outside court)

JOURNALIST: But today, Magistrate Nair's decision came under...

(Oscar's legal team in court)

JOURNALIST: heavy scrutiny and criticism

Pretoria – North Gauteng High Court

Judge Bert Bam – North Gauteng High court delivering judgement in court: The conditions, D, H, I and J, also in my view, contain a clear and pertinent punitive element inconsistent with the basic principles of bail that are alluded to above. The set conditions clearly did not serve any purpose with regard to the appellant's bail. This is an additional reason for finding that the magistrate was wrong

(Wide shot of entrance to Silverwoods estate with the sign "Silverwoods. Cars driving in and out of booms)

JOURNALIST: Pistorius can now return to his home...

(Sign written "Brooklyn Entrance" with police emblem, pans out to reveal entrance of station)

JOURNALIST: and he doesn't have to report to a police station on a regular basis. He's also freed from supervision, and can now also consume alcohol.

(Pistorius running on track with other athletes)

JOURNALIST: Today's ruling also paves the way for Pistorius to travel abroad with certain conditions attached.

(Graphic entitled "Travel Conditions" also "inform lawyer", "provide itinerary", "hand passport back")

JOURNALIST: He'll have to inform his attorney a week before travelling, and provide and itinerary. He'll have to hand his passport back to his attorney on his return.

Medupi Simasiku – NPA doing interview in court: I believe Oscar will abide by the bail conditions as set out, and he'll make sure he doesn't disturb any witness or interfere with any witness.

(photo of Reeve Steenkamp)

JOURNALIST: Reeve Steenkamp's family has declined to comment on today's events

Journalist does PTC in front of the court. The NPA cannot say whether the charge sheet will be ready ahead of Pistorius's next court appearance on the 4th of June. But it wants the trial to start before the end of this year...

(Oscar Pistorius sitting in dock with his hands on his face)

JOURNALIST: It's investigation is at an advanced stage

SOQ

04 04 2013

ANCHOR (Sport) Standing with paper and pen in hand. Next to him is a screen with Oscar Pistorius: Welcome back. You're watching SABC News. Murder accused Paralympic and Olympic athlete; Oscar Pistorius has resumed training. However according to his agent Pierre van Zyl, it's to give Pistorius some sort of routine.

(Footage of Oscar Pistorius putting on his prosthetic legs while on the running track. File)

JOURNALIST: Pistorius is still an emotional wreck. Those around him support his wish to resume training...

(picture of someone with a video camera filming)

JOURNALIST: in order to keep active...

(Oscar running slowly on the racing track)

JOURNALIST: while his impending court case for murder...

(group of journalists filming on race track, pans to Oscar at starting line about to get up and run while training)

JOURNALIST: takes its mental toll. Pistorius met his agent van Zyl and trainer Ampie Louw earlier this week. And it was Pistorius's decision...

(close-up of Oscar's face while on the track)

JOURNALIST: to get back onto the athletics track.

Peet van Zyl – Pistorius' Agent does interview outside with the racing track in the background. Voice over: The main reason his coach Ampie and I encouraged him to start training again, was to get him back into a routine. To get him back competing is not part of the plan at the moment. It's far too early for that. People are talking about world championships and those types of things. It's just too early, and I believe he must be in good physical condition if he wants to compete internationally. And more importantly, the trauma he experienced with the incident affected him psychologically. He needs to overcome that before he can even consider competing internationally again

(Oscar running fast on the track with someone running alongside him)

JOURNALIST: van Zyl made the point that Oscar was not training to compete. Rather that it was to keep him physically fit. There are no race commitments anytime in the future. The Paralympian is still an emotional wreck.

Peet van Zyl (voice over): Oscar is suffering that's no secret. He's seeing a psychologist, and it's going to take time, but we hope for the best.

(Oscar running on the track with the camera focused on his legs, and his face cut out for the bulk of the shot)

JOURNALIST: Pistorius' athletic career has been on hold since...

(photo of)

JOURNALIST: the killing of 29 year old on Valentine's day.

13. Petrol

02 04 2013

ANCHOR: Motorists will be paying 12 cents more for a litre of petrol from midnight tonight. But users of gas aren't really excited about the 50 cents a kilogram decrease in prices which kicks in at the same time. One small business owners say the decrease will have little impact on its pocket.

(petrol attendant filling up a car)

JOURNALIST: The petrol price increase at midnight...

(petrol tank gauge reading figures)

JOURNALIST: which usually leads to higher costs of good and services...

(Shots of petrol attendants at work in garage)

JOURNALIST: may push many already indebted consumers further into the red.

Jana Le Roux – Economist doing an interview seated in an office: Even though this increase that we're seeing at midnight is not as big as the one we saw at the beginning of March, over the last three months, the petrol price has risen by R1.34 cents a litre, and from that point of view you can understand how households are feeling the strain.

(Two women at work in a kitchen. Big pots on a gas stove. Gas tank is visible)

JOURNALIST: The 50 cents per kilogram cut in the price of gas is little relief to small business owners.

Thokozani Nkosi – small business owner doing an interview indoors, standing. Voice over: Gas is very expensive and it hurts business sometimes it's busier and you have to refill constantly

(A mobile kitchen caravan written "WakaWaka's Takeaways. Big gas tank is outside. Two women at work outside)

JOURNALIST: Liza also sells food along the roadside. She buys 19 kilograms of gas every second day...

(zoom into "Easigas" sign on gas tank)

JOURNALIST: to keep her business running

Laiza Kekana – Small business owner doing interview outside the Waka-Waka's caravan with the gas tank next to her. Voice over: I use this 19 kilogram. And for six days I spend R1600 to refill. I heard the price is going down by 60 cents, but for me it won't make any difference.

(Paraffin stove with fire burning. On table indoors. Other items also on the table including roll-one. A person's hands which just lit the fire is still in shot, as is a bottle of Sprite)

JOURNALIST: Paraffin is a popular cooking fuel for lower income groups...

(man pouring paraffin into a paraffin stove, indoors of a structure with a corrugated iron roof)

JOURNALIST: They have been handed a 35 cents decrease, but...

(woman pouring some Paraffin into a stove indoors)

JOURNALIST: this comes on the back of a 72 cents per litre increase

(Woman pouring liquid between bottles. In a cluttered house)

JOURNALIST: over the past two month. Le Roux says these cuts are insignificant.

Le roux does interview: The paraffin and the gas reduction in the prices that we're seeing, you need to take into consideration that it is off a relatively high base that prices are coming down. And it's a function of lower commodity prices that we're seeing the decline of the prices of these commodities, and because it is so marginal, the decreases that we're seeing, it is unlikely to have a significant impact, and offer substantial relief to consumers of these products

(wide shot of garage with cars filling petrol)

JOURNALIST: Motorists could have seen a...

(petrol pump gauge with changing number)

JOURNALIST: 47 cents a litre cut in the price tomorrow

(various petrol attendants filling cars)

JOURNALIST: but instead, thanks to the weak rand and increases to the fuel levy...

(petrol tank gauge)

JOURNALIST: and the road accident fund announcing the budget in February.

(general shots at garages)

JOURNALIST: the pain at the pump continues

SOQ

14. Pope

11 03 2013

Break headline...

(image of the Vatican)

Coming up: Eyes on the Vatican

ANCHOR: coming up..

(images of people working at the Vatican)

ANCHOR: a new pope expected before the weekend. Details after the break

ANCHOR: the conclave to elect a new pope starts tomorrow. Analysts expect the new pope to be elected before the weekend. Cardinals met today...

(cuts to image of Vatican with people outside)

Vatican City

ANCHOR: for final talks before entering the conclave

(inside the Vatican)

ANCHOR: tomorrow the 115 cardinal will vote once. There after they can vote up to four times a day until one of them receives a two thirds majority, or 77 votes. No conclave has lasted more than 5 days in the past century

(someone opening a box with clothing)

ANCHOR: Italians have held the papacy for 455 years before the 1978 election of polish born pope, John Paul

Interview with Father Thomas Rosica – Vatican Press Secretary (outside): there is a dynamic that ticks over once they are Sistine Chapel. The first vote kind of lays out the names. We will have a pope by the end of the week. I don't think this is going to be a long conclave.

12 03 2013

ANCHOR: Roman Catholic cardinals have begun a conclave to elect a replacement for Pope Benedict. The Roman Catholic church is facing one of the most difficult periods in its history.

(shot of Vatican City)

Vatican City

ANCHOR: in a process dating back to medieval times,

(images inside the Vatican)

ANCHOR: 115 cardinals from 48 countries, shut themselves in the Vatican Sistine Chapel, just over half an hour ago. The secret conclave, steeped in ritual and prayer, could carry on

for several days. The cardinal will vote four times a day until two thirds can agree on a candidate

(ladies in black and hot pink standing around, sending up pink smoke)

ANCHOR: for the 1.2 billion strong church. Earlier today a catholic women's group protested

(people gathered with media around them)

ANCHOR: at the lack of female voices

(ladies in black and hot pink standing around, sending up pink smoke)

ANCHOR: involved in this election process.

(pictures of the top of the chapel)

ANCHOR: They've called for an end to the ban on women in leadership

(people gathered, female priest in robe in the forest)

ANCHOR: and decision making positions in the church saying women make up more than...

(wide shot of the area)

ANCHOR: 50% of the church.

13 03 2013

Headline: Coming up: Secret Conclave vote continues

(Scores of people outside the chapel)

ANCHOR: Coming up, no pope yet

(black smoke from chimney)

ANCHOR: Vatican city crowds greeted by black smoke...

(a visitor praying earnestly)

ANCHOR: after three rounds of voting

ANCHOR: The catholic faithful from around the globe are still patiently waiting to find out who will be their next pope. Some 115 Roman cardinals are voting for their next leader of the Roman catholic church.

(Vatican city with crowds waiting outside with umbrellas)

Vatican City: Rome

JOURNALIST: Vatican city, and the pilgrims came in their thousands to await their new pope

(building with statues, also visible is the chimney where the smoke will come out of)

JOURNALIST: cardinals held an initial ballot yesterday and two more this morning.

(Chimney with black smoke)

JOURNALIST: But black smoke rose from the chimney of the Sistine Chapel, indicating the votes were inconclusive

(close up of an earnest visitor with a rosary in hand)

JOURNALIST: although disappointed, visitors found the experience moving
(flags waving, umbrellas, crowd)

JOURNALIST: many were determined to return to St Peter's Square tonight

(Interview with passer-by as he was walking, male white): Well, they didn't select the pope, so hopefully they'll do it tonight, so we'll come back tonight at 7 o'clock to see if the smoke is white. (male white, voice over) "I expected that the first vote would not produce a result, and I don't expect to see white smoke until tomorrow

(indoors, picture)

JOURNALIST: Latin American countries, Africa and Asia, would like to see the next pope come from one of their countries

(Picture of Peter Turkson with PAPAL CANDIDATES – Peter Turkson (61), Ghana)

JOURNALIST: Cardinal Peter Turkson of Ghana is Africa's only candidate

(writing: Odilo Pedro Scherer (61), Brazil; Mark Ouellet (68), Canada; Sean O'Malley (68), USA; Leonardo Sandi (60), Argentina; Oscar Rodrigues (70), Honduras; Angelo Scola (71), Italy)

JOURNALIST: Brazil's cardinal Odilo Scherer is reported to be liked by the Vatican bureaucracy.

(wide shot of roof of chapel)

JOURNALIST: the cardinals were to gather...

(inside the chapel, footage has been used)

JOURNALIST: for another two rounds of voting this afternoon. They face a tough task of finding a leader capable of facing the child abuse scandals and a leak of secret papal documents that uncovered corruption inside the church government. The cardinals will remain sequestered in the Vatican until they have elected the church's 266th pontiff. The vote follows the resignation of pope Benedict the 16th.

(pope in a car driving down the street, being greeted by the public)

JOURNALIST: He stunned the world last month by becoming the first pope in 600 years to resign.

14 03 2013

Headline:

(pope walking down the aisle, carrying a flower arrangement)

ANCHOR: coming up, Pope Francis...

Coming Up: First Day on the Job

ANCHOR: Prays for guidance. Details after the break...

ANCHOR: Welcome back. You're watching the news at 7. Pope Francis has celebrated his first mass as pontiff of the Sistine Chapel, together with the cardinals who elected him yesterday. This morning the pontiff left the Vatican to pray in one of the oldest churches in the world, dedicated to the Madonna. Pope Francis's election has been widely welcomed across the world.

(Footage was taken at night. Scores of people in front of church, lit up, wide shot)

Italy – Rome

JOURNALIST: The election of Pope Francis...

(white smoke from close up chimney)

JOURNALIST: has broken Europe's centuries-old grip on the papacy

(Ringing bells)

JOURNALIST: He is the first...

(pope walking with some cardinals down an aisle carrying flowers)

JOURNALIST: non-European pope in 1300 years and the first Jesuit and Latin American to lead the world's 1.2 billion Catholics

(Praying cardinals in chapel. Starts with singing and shot on pope's clasped hands. Then pans up to his face, which is looking up intently)

JOURNALIST: Cardinal George Bergoglio has adopted the name Francis in honour of St Francis of Assisi, a 12th century saint who spurned wealth...

(priest in another church, walking down the aisle to benches)

JOURNALIST: to pursue a life of poverty.

Johannesburg

JOURNALIST: His election has been welcomed here at home. Father Russell Pollit says Africans should be encouraged by the fact that the pope is...

(Camera pans to stain coloured window pattern)

JOURNALIST: ...a champion of the poor.

(close-up of life candles)

Voice of the father: I think it's fantastic that there's a pope from the Southern Hemisphere

Cut to his face (Father Russell Pollitt – Catholic Priest): because the church is definitely growing in the Southern Hemisphere. More especially in South America and Africa and Asia.

So I think it is exciting that there is a pope who will come with a different perspective to the European mind.

(a man kneels to pray)

JOURNALIST: some would have preferred a pope closer to home

Coloured man who was praying (Chazlon Henning – South African Catholic): I really feel that they need to elect a pope from Africa, not from Argentina because I think that the African Christian world needs that and it would be good for us.

(Pomp and ceremony of the papacy. Walking out of a red curtain carrying a cross)

JOURNALIST: His unexpected election has answered some fundamental questions about the direction of the church

(close-up of pope)

JOURNALIST: Pope Francis has the reputation of someone willing to challenge powerful interests. He's been known to take on Argentine President, Christina Fernandez. He's also spoken out strongly against gay marriage...

(Crowds in square with umbrellas)

JOURNALIST: ...denouncing it as an intent to destroy God's plan. His inauguration mass will be held on Tuesday.

15 03 2013

ANCHOR: Pope Francis spent his second day of his papacy meeting with cardinal in the Vatican...

(Pope Francis walks in and is applauded)

ANCHOR: the pontiff praised his predecessor...

Vatican City

ANCHOR: Pope Benedict the 16th. The new pope stumbled briefly as he greeted the dean of the college of cardinals, Angelo Sadana. He swiftly recovered from the trip.
(footage of pope looking straight ahead in direction of camera, at the audience)

ANCHOR: tomorrow he holds an audience with the media...
(fades to cardinals standing and giving applause)

ANCHOR: he's expected to celebrate mass at St Peters and then deliver the traditional blessing on Sunday
(pope seated, while someone reads something to him)

ANCHOR: but he'll only be installed as pope on Tuesday. Pope Francis, who's from Argentina, will become the first pope born outside Europe in 1300 years.
(pope embraces the cardinal who was reading to him)

16 03 2013

Headline: Pro –poor pope
(old to middle aged men gather around the pope)
Coming up after the break the pontiff grants first audience to world

ANCHOR: Pope Francis gave his clearest indication yet that he wants a more austere catholic church
(Visuals outside Vatican with a crowd of people)
Vatican City

ANCHOR: The Pontiff addressed world media today, laughing and joking with his first audience.
(pope and other dignitaries walking on stage as large crowd is gathered below)

ANCHOR: Pope Francis said he wanted the church to remember that its mission was to serve the poor. It seems the Pope will introduce a different style to the papacy . On the night of his election he shunned the papal limousine and joined other cardinals on a bus. He also insisted on paying his bill...
(image above crowd's heads)

ANCHOR:...at the church run hotel.
(cardinals surround the pope)

ANCHOR: The pontiff explained his decision to take the name Francis
Pope Francis I addressing audience voice over: The man who gives us the spirit of the poor man. I'd like a poor church, and a church for the poor.

17 03 2013

Headline 2: Pope urges forgiveness

(huge crowds of people Some carrying banners at St Peters square)

ANCHOR: The new pontiff conducts his first ()
(pope at a podium on a window, waves to the people outside)

ANCHOR: at St Peters' square

ANCHOR: To Rome now where tens of thousands of people gathered in St Peters Square to attend Pope Francis's first Angelas Blessing.

Vatican City

(thousands of people in St Peters Square some carrying different national flag)

JOURNALIST: About 150-thousand people packed into the square, support from the pontiff's native Argentina evident.

(pope standing looking outside window waving at the crowd.)

JOURNALIST: He humbly thanked everyone for their prayers and preached that the strongest message of God is mercy. Many in the crowd were moved.

Interview with people in attendance. Two women standing together, white middle age. One speaks. Voice over: He has deeply moved us. He's as simple as the words he uses. Man wearing shades, look like a Latin American: Let's hope he will have a good papacy, and helps to bring back all the faithful who have left Catholicism. Long live the Pope. I am very happy.

(inside the church)

JOURNALIST: Earlier in the day held a small mass in a church in the walls of the Vatican.

(pope performing rituals)

JOURNALIST: His outgoing nature and sense of humour differs notably from the much more formal Benedict.

(people worshiping, praying and singing)

JOURNALIST: At least 1 million people are expected to...

(pope performing rituals with other cardinal)

JOURNALIST: to attend pope Francis's inaugural mass on Tuesday.

19 03 2013

ANCHOR: Pope Francis set the tone for a new humbler papacy in his inaugural mass in St Peters Square. The pontiff has called on the church to defend the weak and protect the environment. About 200-thousand people attended the service marking the start of his papacy.

(Wide shot of scores of people at St Peters Square, music playing)

Vatican City

JOURNALIST: Thousands of people journeyed across Rome, hoping to get a coveted place at St Peters Square

(pope drives in a very open vehicle and waves to cheering crowds)

JOURNALIST: Pope Francis greeted hundreds of thousands of people as he drove through the square.

(people pass baby to pope to kiss./bless)

JOURNALIST: Francis is seen as having a common touch and great communication skills
(flags flying)

JOURNALIST: And has given clear signs already that he will bring a new broom to the crisis hit papacy.

(pope reaches out to a disabled man)

JOURNALIST: Favouring humility and simplicity over pomp and grandeur

(pans out to crowds with waving flags)

JOURNALIST: The Argentine pope underlined his constant message since his election last Wednesday...

(pope reads from book at mike, wearing costume and does sign of cross)

JOURNALIST:... that the churches mission was to defend the poor and disadvantaged

(audio of him giving a blessing)

Karen Rice – American Pilgrim (White lady): He's so wonderful We're really excited. I love everything that he stands for. He just seems like such a wonderful, humble, joyous man

(Francis, Mugabe and Grace, both bow as they greet him)

JOURNALIST: Among those attending the mass was Zimbabwe's president, Robert Mugabe, who had been under a European ban travel since 2002 because of allegations of vote rigging and human rights abuses

(pope interacts with other people)

JOURNALIST: Technically, Vatican City is not included in the ban.

27 03 2013

ANCHOR: Pope Francis has called for an urgent solution for the violence in the Central African Republic in his first reference to a specific conflict since his inauguration last week. He says he's following the situation closely. Meanwhile, the process to identify those killed will start tomorrow morning. It will be followed by a formal SANDF mortal receiving ceremony. A memorial service will be held next week. It's unclear whether the fallen soldiers will be given semi or full state funerals.

(Faces of 13 black men, on background of South African flag, SA instrumental anthem playing)

JOURNALIST: the country's heroes perished in Saturday's battle with thousands of armed insurgents on the outskirts of the capital

(A car drives into a gated area with signs)

JOURNALIST: A daunting task tomorrow for their loved ones)

(Other cars, and a soldier in an urban area)

JOURNALIST: Identifying those who died in the line of duty

(outside a military base with a sign written "TEMPE military base")

JOURNALIST: this is where the 13 were based

Bloemfontein

Close up of the sign which reads "Welcome to the Conventional Heartbeat of the SANDF TEMPE Military Base" also a cartoon image of a soldier with a gun)

JOURNALIST: a sombre atmosphere prevails

(close up of an emotional woman)

JOURNALIST: Earlier this week, Flora Seletshwana presumed the worst.

(someone comes from behind (Can't see who it is) to comfort her)

JOURNALIST: She tried frantically to contact her brother Elbert

(picture of a man in soldier uniform wielding a gun)

JOURNALIST: He was also deployed to the Central African Republic, but was later located unharmed.

Keolebogo Seletswana doing interview inside a house, behind there is a plant and a blank wall. Voice over: We were worried after soldiers were attacked in CAR. When we tried to contact him, we could not reach him. Now we are relieved because he contacted his wife
(soldier of man wielding a gun)

JOURNALIST: Seletswana is expected to be home for his 43rd birthday celebration in Bloemfontein this weekend.

(soldiers driving around in a vehicle; bottom emblem says Reuters)

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile rebels continue to patrol the streets of Bangui

Central African Republic: Bangui

JOURNALIST: Where looting is rife. The so-called Red brigade says they aim to restore order.

(van driving out of gate with flag)

JOURNALIST: Self-proclaimed president, Michel Djotodia has asked regional peacekeepers stationed there...

(building with CAR flags flying outside)

JOURNALIST: to help restore order

SOQ

15. SABC

08 03 2013

Sports section

ANCHOR: The SABC has secured the services of two of the country's most experience's sports presenters. Thomas Mlambo and Tsepho Mabona were introduced to the public today and will start on the 1st of April.

(Delegates are sitting at a table, ahead of what looks like a briefing. A man standing at the podium)

JOURNALIST: The SABC is seeking to launch a 24 hour sports channel this year

Johannesburg

(Tsepo giving address, but his voice is mutes. Thomas also in shot)

JOURNALIST: ...and Mlambo want to be part of this new adventure

Sports Presenter: Thomas Mlambo *(speaking in an interview with SABC banner in the background)*: This was a chance to be part of that new adventure. And I thought Wow, yeah, why not? I've done so much on the private broadcaster platform before. Now it's time to do something at home. In South Africa.

(Camera cuts to SABC CEO Lulama, addressing the briefing by her voice is muted. Mabona sitting next to her)

JOURNALIST: Mabona wants to use his second opportunity at the public broadcaster to reach fans outside the studio as well.,

(Cuts to Tsepho Mabona doing interview): We should take the initiative when we go out to people, We should help in societal issues that are around, that are spoken about and get more involved in inspiring the youth.

(Mlambo, Mabona, Lulama and third person shaking hands and smiling)

JOURNALIST: Mlambo joins from rival Supersport
SOQ

11 03 2013

ANCHOR: Communications minister, Dina Pula, is locked in a meeting with Ben Ngubane and Thami kaPlaatjie, after they resigned as SABC board chair and deputy chair. President Jacob Zuma's office said he'd received a joint letter of resignation from Ngubane and kaPlaatjie. His office says the presidency is considering the resignations

(SABC board and CEO seated on a panel with SABC banner in background)

JOURNALIST: It's a protracted meeting. The minister wants the duo to withdraw their resignations

(zoom into one of them)

JOURNALIST: the precise reason for the resignations is not known

(Zoom into two others, including Hlaudi)

JOURNALIST: Last week the board announced that Hlaudi Motsoeneng's tenure as acting COO had been terminated,

(Hlaudi interacting with another member)

JOURNALIST: and that he'd reverted to GE stakeholder relations and provinces

(Hlaudi and Ngubane seated)

JOURNALIST: It was reported later the Ngubane said Motsoeneng had in fact been reinstated

(Lulama shaking her head, arms folded)

JOURNALIST: today the presidency confirmed that their resignation letters had been received

(perhaps kaPlaatjie)

JOURNALIST: Presidency spokesperson, Mac Maharaj, said the president...

(Dina Pule and kaPlaatjie)

JOURNALIST: would apply his mind on the matter

Mac Maharaj via phone. *(His picture, SA flag in background, icon of phone" Voice of Mac Maharaj- Presidency spokesperson):* The matter is receiving the attention of the president. He is aware of the urgency and the nature of the problem, and he will be giving it his attention as it requires.

(Ngubeni giving another address, SABC banner in background)

JOURNALIST: Only the president has the power to appoint or dismiss the chair of the board and the deputy

(KaPlaatjie doing an interview with SABC banner in background)

JOURNALIST: several political have asked the president to dissolved the board.

12 03 2013

ANCHOR: Communications minister, Dina Pule and the SABC board are expected to appear before parliament this week. Members of the board met public protector, Thuli Madonsela, to respond to allegations of mismanagement and maladministration. Board Chairman Ben Ngubane and his deputy, Thami kaPlaatjie resigned at the weekend. President Jacob Zuma has acknowledged receipt of their letters

(wide general shot of Parliament)

JOURNALIST: As plans are afoot to host the SABC board in parliament

(Close up of Jacob Zuma)

JOURNALIST: President Zuma says he will respond to letters of...

(SABC leadership, include COE, board chair, deputy and Dina Pule on a panel with SABC banner in background)

JOURNALIST: resignation in due course.

Zuma giving an interview, seated: I need to consult with the minister. I need to check, whatever. And once we've done all of that we'll then indicate... You heard that the minister commented that she was also going to be seeing the two individuals, so I don't think it's a matter that I can give you a conclusive answer right now.

(picture of Eric Kholswane – Parliamentary Communications Chair, speaking over something that sounds like a recording) Not very audible...

(wide shot of Parliament)

JOURNALIST: Opposition parties in parliament have voiced their concern over the state of affairs at the public broadcaster.

Parliamentarian giving an address (Marian Shinn – DA MP): President Zuma must not be swayed by personal loyalties to allow negotiations for a golden handshake for these men.

They are lucky not to have been fired, so must not have the option of retiring in luxury

(Juli Killian – Cope MP): Cope insists that SABC board must be dissolved and that the minister should be deployed as an ambassador to some or other country

(Shot of Hlaudi and kaPlaatjie with SABC banner in background)

JOURNALIST: The public protector has requested another meeting...

(shot of Ngubane)

JOURNALIST: this time with the board chair and deputy chair

Interview with Kgaleleo Masibi: Public Protector Spokesperson: The public protector will in this instance advise the president to appoint a chairperson because without a chairperson and a deputy chairperson a board cannot function

(Shot of Dina speaking in kaPlaatjie's ear)

JOURNALIST: The Communication's Department...

(close-up of Dina Pule)

JOURNALIST: could not be reached for comment.

18 03 2013

Headline 2: Six Board Members Resign

(people seated around a boardroom table)

ANCHOR: Three SABC board members left. The GCEO gives an assurance that it's business as usual.

Lulama addresses camera directly: We expect that there will soon be a pronouncement made on the way forward

(mid shot with communications minister, Dina Pule)

ANCHOR: President Zuma has accepted the resignations of six SABC board members. The resignations follow those of board chairperson, Ben Ngubane and his deputy Thami kaPlaatjie two weeks ago. The president has requested communications minister, Dina Pule, liaise with the national assembly regarding the process of filling the vacancies.

(Graphic with the following writing: Board Resignations Lumko Mtimde, John Danana, Cedric Gina, Desmond Golding, Cawe Mahlali, Noluthando Gosa)

JOURNALIST: SABC board members who have resigned include Lumko Mtimde, John Danana, Cedric Gina, Desmond Golding, Advocate Cawe Mahlali and Noluthando Gosa. *(people seated around a boardroom table, including Dina Pule)*

JOURNALIST: Meanwhile SABC CEO Lulama Mokhobo has called on staff to remain focused. She says it's imperative that recent events at the broadcaster do not compromise the quality of services to audiences and clients.

(Lulama addressing viewers directly, breaking the norm and looking straight into the screen)

Lulama Mokhobo – SABC GCEO: As per usual we will continue to deliver value also to our clients who we know have entrusted us with monies for us to make their brands come alive through our content.

(three men who are casually dressed seated behind what looks like a dock, journalists)

JOURNALIST: Parliament's portfolio committee will meet to dissolve the board. Its chairperson Eric Kholwane says the remaining board members cannot follow quorum, without it they cannot make decisions which will have an effect on the broadcaster. The committee will recommend five people for an interim board. The national assembly has to approve those names tomorrow afternoon, ahead of the Easter break.

(unlabelled man addresses): Members of the committee I'm sure they are hard at work as we speak to look for South Africans that can form part of the five. Of course if you come with a name you also have to convince the committee on why we must agree that person can serve.

JOURNALIST: By law an interim board is only allowed to operate for six months. A permanent board must then be appointed.

SOQ

19 03 2013

Headline 2: SABC Board Dissolved

(in parliamentary chambers)

ANCHOR: New names recommended for SABC board, but opposition parties have expressed their reservations

DA MP Addressing parliament: This process has effectively circumvented legitimate nomination processes to find suitable candidates

(wide shot of people sitting in parliament)

ANCHOR: Parliament has dissolved the SABC board. Communications portfolio committee chairperson, Eric Qolwane, made the request at the sitting of the national assembly. The committee has recommended the names of five people to make up an interim board. This follows the resignation of eleven out of 12 board members.

(parliamentary chambers, including Dina Pule,)

JOURNALIST: After a day of mulling over issues around the SABC board. The portfolio committee on communications asked the national assembly to dissolve the structure. By then all but one board member had resigned.

Eric Kholwane – Portfolio Committee Chairperson: The first board member which we are recommending is Miss Zanele Allen Tshabalala, Miss Noluthando Primrose Gosa, Mr Vusumuzi Mazosa, Mr Mashang Ronnie Lubitsi and Mr Eraj Aberdeen.

(shot of speaker section of parliament)

JOURNALIST: But opposition parties expressed reservations about the process. They say there had not been enough time...

(close-up of DA MP)

JOURNALIST: to look at the CVs of the nominees

(wide shot of parliamentarians)

JOURNALIST: they also alleged political interference.

Marian Shinn – DA addressing the parliamentarians standing: This process has effectively circumvented legitimate nomination processes to find suitable candidates. It is little more than 24 hours that six more board members had resigned to neutralise what was left

(wide shot of parliamentarians)

Shinn: of a crippled board.

JOURNALIST: despite the protestations, the interim structure was approved. Earlier in the day, communications minister, Dina Pule, denied she had interfered in the previous board's work. She also accused it of breaching corporate governance rules

Dina Pule – Communications Minister addressing meeting sitting down: Maybe some of the things wouldn't have happened if I had interfered. But because I know how I relate to the board and I follow process and how I related to the board and respect it, and the work of the board and respected my position as a shareholder, that is why I have not interfered

JOURNALIST: President Jacob Zuma now has ten days...

(portfolio chair interacts with Pule)

JOURNALIST: to approve the interim board. It may sit for up to six months before a permanent board is appointed.

SOQ

20 03 2013

ANCHOR: There are high expectations of the income five member SABC board. The nominations are yet to be approved by president Jacob Zuma.

(footage from briefing addressed by Ngubane)

JOURNALIST: following initial resignations by chair, Ben Ngubane..

(footage of kaPlaatjie)

JOURNALIST: and his deputy Thami kaPlaatjie, all but one of the board members resigned.

(footage from parliament with Dina Pule, Hlaudi and Lulama)

JOURNALIST: Parliament then dissolved the board. Five names were put forward for an interim board

(Graphic with Heading SABC Interim Board Nominees, SABC logo and watermark image of SABC building; picture of Zandile Tshabalala)

JOURNALIST: Zandile Tshabalala was nominated as chair. She has extensive experience in banking and business and serves on the president's BEE advisory council.

(picture of Noluthando Gosa)

JOURNALIST: Noluthando Gosa served on the previous board. She's held several executive positions, including the national planning commission.

(picture of Iraj Abedian)

JOURNALIST: Well-known economist and public finance expert, Iraj Abedian, was also nominated.

(picture of Vusi Mavuso)

JOURNALIST: Vusi Mavuso has extensive experience in local government, and served on the government's public service commission.

(picture of Ronnie Lubisi)

JOURNALIST: Ronnie Lubisi with senior management experience.

(Panellists of the Communications Workers Union brief media. In the background is a banner with Communication Workers Union)

JOURNALIST: The Communications Workers Union wants stability at the public broadcaster.

Clyde Mervin – CWU Deputy President addresses briefing seated indoors: We want the board to be an independent board which will bring direction and give stability to SABC.

(footage in parliament)

JOURNALIST: Political parties have their expectations

Eric Kholwane doing an interview indoors: The major project they must focus on is the digital migration because SABC has to go digital

Julie Killian – COPE doing an interview indoors. They need to ensure the finances are coming in advertisements etc., so that the organisation can restore its financial management and income

Temba Godi – APC doing interview indoors: stabilisation at management level to ensure that there is coherence, there is focus so that whilst the process of getting a permanent board is unfolding, things don't get worse.

Liezel van der Merwe – IFP: They'll have to exclusively dedicate themselves to rebuilding an organisation that we can respect and we can trust

(inside parliament)

JOURNALIST: The interim board is expected to be in place for six months.

30 03 2013

ANCHOR: SABC news is set to give the country a richer tapestry of news. From Monday, English news will air its inaugural 1 hour long news bulletin. It runs from 6.30pm until 7.30pm on SABC 3, and the programme will feature live interviews, as well as political, economic, entertainment and sports news. SABC acting COO, Hlaudi Moetsoaneng, says this will help fulfil the broadcaster's mandate to inform and entertain the citizens of the country.

Hlaudi Motsoeneng – SABC Acting COO does an interview with Jimmy Mathews sitting next to him: Last year we did ask our own audience to talk about our programming, how they feel about our programming. People have responded very well, and we are glad we are implementing what people proposed to us. To say that we are worried about news because in the provinces we are not getting more coverage. What we are going now we are exactly implementing what our audience wants us to implement. And we are glad that now we will be able to cover national stories and provincial stories, regional stories.

01 04 2013

ANCHOR: Now to get a sense of why we're doing the news differently from today. Many people probably thought it's an April Fools' Day joke, I assure you it's not

(Camera begins to pan out)

ANCHOR: And to tell us more about that we are joined in studio by SABC CEO Lulama Mokhobo. A very good evening to you, and thank you for joining us.
(camera now show both women in studio)

ANCHOR: what was the thinking behind shifting this flagship bulletin to 6.30 and making it an hour long?

Lulama Mokhobo – SABC Group CEO: Well before you fly off on that question (*anchor giggles*) I think I must say to Madiba from the SABC, sincerely, all of us at SABC do wish him a speedy recovery. He's our icon and our father, and we'd like to see him up and doing what he does best, which is to make us smile every now and then and see life a little differently from what we think. Em, Vabakshnee it was very important for us to provide south Africans with an additional half an hour from the 30 minutes that you used to have from 7 o'clock to 7.30. The reason is quite simply that we just do not have enough space in our 30 minute bulletins to be able to provide South African's with perspectives from across the country. And as you know there is so much going on in so many places, in various provinces. I'm sure even right now there must be a province that's got something major that's going on, which we are unable to broadcast because there's only so much you can do in the short time that we had. Secondly it gives us an opportunity to not only expand on the news of the day, but to educate South African's even more. (*Anchor can be heard concurring*) We tend to think that news is just for information. It is also partly for education. And if you have a society that is very well informed, they are able to make better decisions about their daily lives – where they are going and what they will be doing tomorrow, and how they interact with their environment

ANCHOR: Talking about the viewers, was viewer research done prior to launching this? How much of research? And what can we take into account about what people want to actually see us deliver?

Lulama: Well there was indeed, viewer research that was done through our platforms, and that was driven largely by Hlaudi Moetsoaneng together with the teams where they called on all South Africans to give a sense about what they thought about the SABC programming. And not surprisingly, news took centre stage where people complained, but others kept saying we need to be able to see more of regional events and happenings. And we've taken that on board, very seriously. If we don't do that then we cannot be the public broadcaster.

ANCHOR: Would you say that exactly that, broadcasting regional news, is what sets us apart from our competitors?

Lulama: Without a doubt. Without a doubt. We are truly south African, and yes while we do carry some international news, our focus should be on what is happening in south Africa and the region itself. And when we look at provincial news gathering services, we actually have a huge amount of content, that as you know, as a newswoman yourself, comes through our pipes, and we are unable to use it. I think for me it's a bit of a tragedy that so much is going on, and the country doesn't know about it. So yes, a major proportion of what will be happening in this one hour news cast will pay due respect and create space for the regions also to be heard.

ANCHOR: We're sitting in a new state of the art studio that's courtesy of this new plan, and we're seeing this one hour show being launched now as a flagship show, what else can people expect from the SABC? We've had some bad PR. How are we going to deal with that fall out and put ourselves out there again?

Lulama: I think, someone told me once that when you start moving, dogs start barking, and I don't mean people are dogs, but indeed when you start creating change, there can be concern and people will jump up and down and scream and say no they don't like this or the other, but also I think we have to recognise as a responsible public broadcaster, it's important to be reminded every now and then if we're doing certain things wrong, and it's important for us to be able to listen, and to create change where we need to create change. So for us the negative publicity, yes it's been very painful in some instances. In many instances, there's been innuendo and falsification of facts, in some instances, but we are taking it in our stride. What I appeal to everybody who bothers to listen to me, is that don't judge us by what you read. Judge us by what you actually see on the channels. As you know, we've got great new content. There are people I doubt who actually watch the SABC who complain all the time that we are repeating. We are not. We actually have a great deal of new content. And just to give you a sense, Vabakshnee, did you know that from a straight forward news perspective, we actually broadcast seven and a half hours per day. And when you look at our current affairs content we broadcast three hours a day. And that's a hell of a lot of content that we put out, which people may not be aware of. But I would like to challenge them to actually switch on and see what we actually do.

ANCHOR: Well we'll have to leave it there. Thank you very much for joining us. That was the SABC's Lulama Mokhobo, challenging people to actually judge the SABC on what we do and not what is written about us in the papers. It remains to be seen how the public will actually receive this new broadcast.